Thank you for choosing a MINI.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new MINI. Also use the Integrated Owner’s Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your MINI. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your MINI.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Get started now. We wish you driving fun and inspiration with your MINI.
Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 242.

6 Information

AT A GLANCE
14 Cockpit
18 Onboard monitor
26 Voice activation system
29 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

CONTROLS
34 Opening and closing
54 Adjusting
63 Transporting children safely
66 Driving
80 Displays
100 Lights
105 Safety
122 Driving stability control systems
126 Driving comfort
144 Climate control
151 Interior equipment
153 Digital compass
160 Storage compartments

DRIVING TIPS
166 Things to remember when driving
170 Loading
173 Saving fuel

MOBILITY
182 Refueling
184 Fuel
186 Wheels and tires
198 Engine compartment
200 Engine oil
204 Coolant
206 Maintenance
208 Replacing components
220 Breakdown assistance
226 Care

REFERENCE
234 Technical data
237 Appendix
242 Everything from A to Z
INFOGRAPHIC

USING THIS OWNER'S MANUAL

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
▷ Online Owner's Manual.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

User's manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can also be called up via the following media:


ADDITIONAL SOURCES OF INFORMATION

A dealer's service center will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

Internet

Information about MINI, e.g., on technology, is available on the Internet: www.miniusa.com

MINI Moterer's Guide app

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app for iOS or Android in the respective Store.

SYMBOLS AND DISPLAYS

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system..

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

舸 Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.
First possibility.

Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, in this Owner's Manual, we also describe and illustrate features that are not available in your vehicle, for example, because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

On right-hand drive vehicles, some control elements are arranged differently from what is shown in the illustrations.

STATUS OF THE OWNER'S MANUAL

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:


Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

OWN SAFETY

Manufacturer

The manufacturer of this MINI is Bayerische Motoren Werke Aktionengesellschaft, BMW AG.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer’s service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g., the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a
MINI dealer’s service center. If you choose to use another service facility, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of a facility that performs work, e.g. maintenance and repair, according to MINI specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, e.g. maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

**Parts and accessories**
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by the manufacturer of the MINI.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a MINI dealer’s service center.

MINI parts and accessories were tested by the manufacturer of the MINI for their safety and suitability in MINI vehicles.

The manufacturer of your vehicle warrants genuine MINI parts and accessories.

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with MINI vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for MINI vehicles under all usage conditions.

**California Proposition 65 Warning**
California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

**Service and warranty**
We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

**Maintenance**
Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
Specifications for required maintenance measures:
▷ MINI Maintenance system
▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the MINI New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

DATA MEMORY

Many electronic components on your vehicle are equipped with data memories that temporarily or permanently store technical information about the condition of the vehicle, events and faults. This technical information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment:
▷ Operating mode of system components, fill levels for instance.
▷ Status messages for the vehicle and from its individual components, e.g., wheel rotation speed/vehicle speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration.
▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, e.g., lights and brakes.
▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engaging the stability control system.
▷ Ambient conditions, such as temperature.

This data is purely technical in nature and is used to detect and correct faults and to optimize vehicle functions. Motion profiles over routes traveled cannot be created from this data. When service offerings are used, e.g., repair services, service processes, warranty claims, quality assurance, this technical information can be read out from the event and fault memories by employees of a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, including the manufacturer, using special diagnostic tools. You can obtain further information there if you need it. After an error is corrected, the information in the fault memory is deleted or overwritten on a continuous basis.

With the vehicle in use there are situations where you can associate these technical data with individuals if combined with other information, e.g., an accident report, damage to the vehicle, eye witness accounts — possibly with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer - such as vehicle emergency locating - you can transmit certain vehicle data from the vehicle.

EVENT DATA RECORDER EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:
▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data are re-
corded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

**VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER**

The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment.

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

**REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS**

**For US customers**

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration.

NHTSA, in addition to notifying MINI of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or MINI of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safecar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safecar.gov

**For Canadian customers**

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may telephone the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.
COCKPIT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

ALL AROUND THE STEERING WHEEL

1 Power windows, all   45
2 Power windows, individual   45
3 Exterior mirror operation   60
4 Central locking system   40
5 Lights
   Front fog lights   103
   Rear fog lights   103

0 Lights off
Daytime running lights   102
Parking lights   100
Low beams   100
Automatic headlamp control 101
Cornering lights 102
High-beam Assistant 102
Instrument lighting 103

6 Steering wheel buttons, left
Camera-based cruise control on/off 126
Cruise control on/off 131
Cruise control: store speed
Pausing, continuing cruise control
Cruise control: increase speed
Cruise control: reduce speed
Camera-based cruise control: reduce distance
Camera-based cruise control: increase distance

8 Instrument cluster 80
9 Steering column stalk, right
Windshield wipers 72
Rain sensor 73
Cleaning windows 73

10 Steering wheel buttons, right
Voice activation 26
Telephone
Confirm the selection 89
Move selection up 89
Move selection down 89
Increase volume
Reduce volume

11 Horn
12 Adjust the steering wheel 62
13 Unlock hood 198
ALL AROUND THE CENTER CONSOLE

1. Hazard warning system 220
   - Intelligent Safety 115

2. Control Display 18
3. Radio/Multimedia
4. Glove compartment 160
5. Climate control 144
6. PDC Park Distance Control 134
   - Rearview camera 137
   - Parking assistant 139
   - Auto Start/Stop function 68

7. Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 66
   - DSC Dynamic Stability Control 122
   - Head-up Display 94

8. Steptronic transmission selector lever 75
   - Manual transmission selector lever 75
9. Controller with buttons 19
10. Parking brake 71

Driving Dynamics Control 124
ALL AROUND THE INTERIOR MIRROR

1. Emergency Request
2. Indicator lamp, front-seat passenger airbag
3. Reading lights
4. Ambient light
5. Convertible top
6. Interior lights

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 969 276 - II/16
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

THE CONCEPT

The onboard monitor combines the functions of a multitude of switches. Thus, these functions can be operated from a central location.

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

OVERVIEW OF CONTROL ELEMENTS

Control elements

1. Control Display
2. Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

Information

▷ To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions.
▷ Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.
▷ In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, e.g. due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, e.g. through shadow or climate control system, the normal functions are re-established.

Switching on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the controller.
Switching off

1. Press button.
2. "Turn off control display"

Controller with navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

1. Turn.
2. Press.

3. Move in four directions.

Buttons on controller

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Open the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RADIO</td>
<td>Opens the Radio menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIA</td>
<td>Opens the Multimedia menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAV</td>
<td>Opens the Navigation menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Opens the phone menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK</td>
<td>Displays the previous display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>Opens the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Controller without navigation system

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

1. Turn.
2. Press.


The main menu is displayed. All onboard monitor functions can be called up via the main menu.

**Selecting menu items**
Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

   1. Press the controller.

**Menu items in the Owner's Manual**
In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, e.g., "Settings".

**Changing between panels**
After a menu item is selected, e.g., "Radio", a new panel is displayed. Panels can overlap.

1. Move the controller to the left.
   Closes current display and shows previous display.
2. Reopens previous display by pressing BACK button. In this case, the current panel is not closed.

---

**Buttons on controller**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MENU</td>
<td>Open the main menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUDIO</td>
<td>Open audio menu last listened to, switch between audio menus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEL</td>
<td>Opens the phone menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BACK</td>
<td>Open previous panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPTION</td>
<td>Opens the Options menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**OPERATING CONCEPT**

**Opening the main menu**

Press button.

---

20
Move the controller to the right.
Opens new display on top of previous screen.

Arrows pointing to the left or right indicate that additional panels can be opened.

Opening the Options menu
Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.

Additional options: move the controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.

Options menu
The "Options" menu consists of various areas:
▷ Screen settings, e.g., "Split screen".
▷ Control options for the selected main menu, e.g., for "Radio".
▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, e.g., "Store station".

Changing settings
1. Select a field.
2. Turn the controller until the desired setting is displayed.
3. Press the controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions
Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. It indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.
☑ Function is activated.
☐ Function is deactivated.

TOUCHPAD
Some functions of the onboard monitor can be operated using the touchpad on the controller:

Selecting functions
On the Control Display:
1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "Touchpad"
3. Select the desired function.
   ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   ▷ "Interactive map": viewing the interactive map.
   ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers
Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:
The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. For entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 25.

Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.

Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. Possible input depends on the set language. Where necessary, enter special characters via the controller.

To delete a character, slide to the left on the touchpad.

To enter a blank space, slide to the right in the center of the touchpad.

To enter a hyphen, slide to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.

To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Operating the interactive map
The interactive map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Controls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interactive map.</td>
<td>Swipe into respective direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enlarge/shrink interactive map.</td>
<td>Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display menu.</td>
<td>Tap once.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Changing settings
You may change Control Display settings, for example the volume, via touchpad. Swipe left or right accordingly.

EXAMPLE: SETTING THE CLOCK

Setting the clock
On the Control Display:

1. Press button. The main menu is displayed.

2. Turn the Controller until "Settings" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.

3. If necessary, move the Controller to the left to display "Time/Date".

4. Turn the Controller until "Time/Date" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.

5. Turn the Controller until "Time:" is highlighted, and then press the Controller.

6. Turn the Controller to set the hours and press the Controller.

7. Turn the Controller to set the minutes and press the Controller.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

Status field
The following information is displayed in the status field at the top right:
▷ Time.
▷ Current entertainment source.
▷ Sound output, on/off.
▷ Wireless network reception strength.
▷ Phone status.
▷ Traffic bulletin reception.

Status field symbols
The symbols are grouped as follows:

Radio symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🎧</td>
<td>HD Radio station is being received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎪</td>
<td>Satellite radio is switched on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Telephone symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Incoming or outgoing call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Missed call.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>Wireless network reception strength.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>Symbol flashes: network search.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>Wireless network is not available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Bluetooth is switched on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📞</td>
<td>Roaming is active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>Text message was received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>Check the SIM card.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📨</td>
<td>SIM card is blocked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SPLIT SCREEN

General information
Additional information can be displayed on the right side of the split screen, for example, information from the onboard computer.
In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

Switching the split screen on/off
On the Control Display:
1. Press button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display
On the Control Display:
1. Press button.
2. "Split screen"
3. Move the Controller until the split screen is selected.
4. Press the Controller or select "Split screen content".
5. Select the desired menu item.

**Displaying the button assignment**

Touch buttons with bare fingers. Do not wear gloves or use objects.
The key assignment is displayed at top edge of screen.

**Deleting the button assignments**

1. Press buttons 1 and 6 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

**DELETING PERSONAL IN THE VEHICLE**

**The concept**

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted via the onboard monitor.

**General information**

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- Personal Profile settings.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored Favorites buttons.
- Travel and on-board computer information.
- Music collection.
- Navigation, e.g. stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Voice notes

**PROGRAMMABLE MEMORY BUTTONS**

**General information**

The onboard monitor functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, e.g., radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**Saving a function**

1. Highlight function via the onboard monitor.
2. Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

**Running a function**

Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, e.g., that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.
Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 30 minutes.

**Functional requirement**
Data can only be deleted while stationary.

**Deleting data**
Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "Settings"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Delete all personal data"
5. "Continue"
6. "OK"

**ENTERING LETTERS AND NUMBERS**

**General information**
On the Control Display:

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. Select additional letters or numbers if needed.
3. "OK": confirm the entry.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>Enter the letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1@+</td>
<td>Enter the numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abc or ABC</td>
<td>Tip controller up.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Without navigation system**
@ a @ Select symbol.

**Entry comparison**
Entering names and addresses: choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

▷ Only those letters are offered during input for which data is available.

▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available on the Control Display.

**Switching between cases, letters and numbers**
Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers:
VOICE ACTIVATION SYSTEM

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

THE CONCEPT

▷ Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.

▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary cannot be used via the voice activation system.

▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.

▷ ‹...› Verbal instructions in the Owner's Manual to use with the voice activation system.

REQUIREMENTS

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

Set the language, refer to page 93.

USING VOICE ACTIVATION

Using the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

A command that is recognized by the voice activation system is announced and displayed in the instrument cluster.

⚠️ This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are available, operate the function via the onboard monitor.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ‹Cancel›.

POSSIBLE COMMANDS

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

The available commands depend on the menu that is currently displayed on the Control Display.

There are short commands for many functions.

You may select lists such as phone lists via voice activation. Read these lists out loud exactly as they show in the respective list.

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have available commands read out loud for you: ‹Voice commands›

E.g. if the "Settings" menu is displayed, the commands for the settings are read out loud.
Executing functions using short commands

Execute functions on the main menu via short commands. It almost doesn't matter which menu item is selected, for example, ›Vehicle status‹.

The list for short commands of the voice activation system can be called up via the Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display.

Help dialog for the voice activation system

Calling up help dialog: ›Help‹

Additional commands for the help dialog:

▷ ›Help with examples‹: announces information about the current operating options and the most important commands for them.

▷ ›Help with voice activation‹: information about the principle of operation for the voice activation system is announced.

ONE EXAMPLE: OPENING THE TONE SETTINGS

Via the main menu

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

Via short command

The desired tone settings can also be started via a short command.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.

SETTING THE VOICE DIALOG

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

On the Control Display:

1. ◀ "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Speech type:"
4. Select setting.

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

▷ The volume is stored for the profile currently used.

INFORMATION ON EMERGENCY REQUESTS

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.
ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.
▷ Keep the doors, windows, and convertible top closed to prevent noise interference.
▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INTEGRATED OWNER'S MANUAL IN THE VEHICLE

The Integrated Owner’s Manual can be displayed on the Control Display. It specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle.


The Integrated Owner's Manual consists of three parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

Search by images

Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Owner's Manual

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

Select components

1. Press button.
2. Turn the Controller: open "Vehicle info".
3. Press the Controller.
4. Selecting desired range:
   ▶ "Quick reference"
   ▶ "Search by pictures"
   ▶ "Owner's Manual"

Leafing through the Owner's Manual

Page by page with link access

Turn the Controller until the next or previous page is displayed.

Page by page without link access

Scroll through the pages directly while skipping the links.

Highlight the symbol once. Now simply press the Controller to browse from page to page.

Scroll back.
Scroll forward.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function
The relevant information can be displayed directly.

Opening via the onboard monitor
To move directly from the application on the Control Display to the options menu:

1. Press button or move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed
Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:
"Display Owner's Manual"

Changing between a function and the Owner's Manual
To switch from a function, e.g., radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. Press button or move the Controller to the right repeatedly until the "Options" menu is displayed.
2. "Display Owner's Manual"
4. Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate permanently between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information
The Owner's Manual can be stored on the Programmable memory buttons and called up directly.

Storing
1. Select "Owner's Manual" via the onboard monitor.
2. Press and hold the desired button, until a signal sounds.

Executing
1. Press button.
   The Owner's Manual is displayed immediately.
HANDLE ME.
OPENING AND CLOSING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

REMOTE CONTROL/KEY

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Every remote control holds a replaceable battery.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. For Settings, refer to page 43.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

The remote controls hold information on required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 206

Overview

1  Unlocking
2  Locking
3  Unlocking the trunk lid
4  Panic mode

Integrated key

Press button, arrow 1, and remove the key, arrow 2.

The driver’s door can be unlocked and locked without remote control, refer to page 40, using the integrated key.

The integrated key can also be used for the glove compartment on the front passenger side.
Replacing the battery

1. Remove integrated key from remote control.
2. Slide the key into the opening and raise the cover.
   The battery compartment is accessible.
3. Slide the key in the cover of the battery compartment and raise the cover.
4. Insert a battery of the same type with the positive side facing up.
5. Insert lid and cover.
6. Push key into the remote control until it engages.

Loss of the remote controls

The lost remote control can be blocked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emergency detection of remote control

The concept

The engine can be started via emergency detection of the remote control, if the remote control is not recognized by the vehicle.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 35.
▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.
▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, e.g., charging of a mobile phone.

New remote controls

New remote controls are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.
Starting the engine

1. Hold the remote control as shown against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Start the engine within 10 seconds.
If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

PERSONAL PROFILE

The concept
Using Personal Profile, individual settings for several drivers can be saved and called up again at a later time.

General information
There are three profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal profile will be activated. All settings stored in the profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically saved in the profile currently activated.

If another profile is selected via the onboard monitor, the settings saved in it will be applied automatically. The new profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control: It can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal profiles.

Adjusting
The settings for the following systems and functions are saved in the active profile. The scope of storable settings is country- and equipment-dependable.

- Unlocking and locking.
- Lights.
- Radio.
- Instrument cluster.
- Programmable memory buttons.
- Volumes, tone.
- Control Display.
- Climate control.
- Navigation.
- Park Distance Control PDC.
- Rearview camera
- Head-up Display.
- Driving Dynamics Control.
- Intelligent Safety.

Profile management

Opening profiles
Regardless of the remote control in use a different profile may be activated.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Select a profile.

The following functions are executed:

- All settings stored in the called-up profile are automatically applied.
The called-up profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.

If the profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this profile will apply to both remote controls. It cannot be differentiated anymore between the settings for the two remote controls.

Renaming profiles
A personal name can be assigned to every profile to avoid confusion between the profiles.

On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Rename current profile"

Resetting profiles
The settings of the active profile are reset to their default values.

On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
   The current profile is selected.
3. Open "Options".
4. "Reset current profile"

Exporting profiles
Most settings of the active profile can be exported.

This can be helpful for securing and retrieving personal settings, before delivering the vehicle to a workshop, for example. Profiles can be taken to another vehicle equipped with the Personal Profile function.

Export is made via the USB port to a USB device.

Popular file systems for USB devices are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats for profile export. Other formats may not support the export.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Export profile"
4. "USB device"

Importing profiles
Profiles stored on a USB device can be imported via the USB interface.

Existing settings are overwritten with the imported profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Import profile"
4. "USB device"

Using the guest profile
The guest profile is for individual settings that are saved in none of the three personal profiles. This can be useful for drivers who are using the vehicle temporarily and do not have their own profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. "Guest"
   4. Adjust the settings.

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Display profile list during start
The profile list can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

1. "Settings"
2. "Profiles"
3. Open "Options".
4. "Display user list at startup"
Using the remote control

Information

WARNING
People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. The vehicle can then not be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control along so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

▷ The vehicle is unlocked.
▷ The interior lights are switched on, when it is dark outside, the courtesy lamps and the MINI logo projection are also switched on. These functions are not available if the interior lamps were switched off manually.
▷ The welcome lamps are switched on, if this function was activated.

For 3-door models:
Press button on the remote control twice in direct succession to activate comfort entry.

When the door is opened, the window is lowered more to make it easier to enter the vehicle.

You can set how the vehicle is to be unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 43.
The alarm system, refer to page 44, is switched off.

Convenient opening

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed on opening and closing the hardtop. There is a risk of injuries. When opening and closing the hardtop, observe the opening procedure and keep the area of movement free.

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the sliding sun roof integrated into the convertible top are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

With Comfort Access, the remote control can be used to open the convertible top when in the vicinity of the vehicle.

Press the remote control button again after the sliding sun roof integrated into the convertible top is fully opened. Press and hold the button until the convertible top is fully opened and locked.

Leaving the vicinity of the vehicle stops the motion.

Locking

WARNING
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.

The driver’s door must be closed.

Press button on the remote control.

The alarm system, refer to page 44, is switched on.

If the vehicle horn honks twice when you lock the car, this means that the engine or ignition is still switched on. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.
Convenient closing

**WARNING**

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

Press and hold the button on the remote control in the area close to the vehicle, until the closing operation is completed. The windows and convertible top close. Releasing the button stops the closing procedure. Leaving the vicinity of the vehicle stops the motion of the convertible top.

Press button in the vicinity of the vehicle again until the convertible top operation is completed.

Unlocking the tailgate

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

The tailgate opens slightly, regardless of whether the vehicle was previously locked or unlocked.

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area. Depending on the features and the country version, it is also possible to have door unlocked. Create the settings, refer to page 43.

If the doors were not unlocked, the trunk lid is locked again as soon as it closes.

Switching on interior lights and courtesy lights

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

The interior lights are switched on, when it is dark outside, the courtesy lamps and the MINI logo projection are also switched on.

These functions are not available if the interior lamps were switched off manually.

If the button is pressed within 10 seconds of when the vehicle was locked Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the anti-theft warning system, refer to page 45, are turned off. After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 35.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.

▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the integrated key, refer to page 40.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device may not cause harmful interference, and
▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

WITHOUT REMOTE CONTROL

From the outside

WARNING
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

If people must spend a longer time in the vehicle while it is very hot or cold outside, there is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.▼

ATTENTION
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.▼

Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key, refer to page 34.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

1. Remove lid on the door lock.
   To do this, slide the integrated key into the opening from below and remove the lid.

2. Unlock or lock door lock.

Alarm system
The alarm system is not armed if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle was unlocked via the door lock. In order to terminate this alarm, unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 35.

From the inside

Locking and unlocking

Press button.
Vehicle is locked.
Press button. The vehicle is unlocked.

Pressing the buttons for the central locking system locks and unlocks the closed doors and the tailgate, but they are not secured against theft. The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Unlocking and opening

Press the central locking system button to lock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.

Pull the door opener on the door to be opened. The other door remain locked.

TAILGATE

Information

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing. ◄

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Opening from the outside

When the tailgate is opened, make sure there is sufficient clearance to prevent damage.

Unlock the vehicle and press the button on the tailgate.

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second. As the case may be, the doors are also unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 39.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung downward.

Opening from the inside

With the vehicle is stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area.

Closing

To close the tailgate, swivel it upwards and press it closed.

Emergency unlocking

Pull the handle inside the cargo area. The tailgate unlocks.

COMFORT ACCESS

The concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.
The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the car’s interior.

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

▷ Unlocking/locking of the vehicle.
▷ Convenient closing.
▷ Unlocking of the tailgate separately.

Information

To avoid locking it into the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Functional requirements

▷ There are no sources of interference nearby.
▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.
▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
▷ The engine can only be started if the remote control is in the vehicle.

Unlocking

On the driver’s or front passenger’s door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button:

Locking

On the driver’s or front passenger’s door handle, press the button.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button:

Convenient closing

⚠️ WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.

To save battery power, ensure that all power consumers are turned off before locking the vehicle.
Press and hold down the handle of the driver or the front seat passenger.

This corresponds to pressing and holding the remote control button: 

In addition to locking, the convertible top and the windows are closed.

Press and hold the button, until the convertible top is fully closed.

**Unlocking the tailgate separately**

Press button on the exterior of the trunk lid.

This corresponds to pressing the remote control button: 

The situation of the doors does not change.

**Malfunction**

Remote control detection by the vehicle can among others be malfunctioning under the following circumstances:

- The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 35.
- Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmit power.
- Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.
- Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity.

Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects or electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 40.

**ADJUSTING**

**Unlocking**

The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

**Doors**

1. "Settings" 
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.
   - "Driver's door only"
     Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - "All doors"
     The entire vehicle is unlocked.

**Tailgate**

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

1. "Settings" 
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select the symbol.
4. Select the desired function.

**Locking**

The settings are saved in the active profile. Personal Profile, refer to page 36.

1. "Settings" 
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select desired setting.
   - "Lock if no door is opened"
The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

▷ "Lock after start driving"
The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

**Confirmation signals from the vehicle**

1. 📱 "Settings"
2. "Doors/key"
3. Select desired setting.

▷ With alarm system:
   - "Acoustic sig. lock/unlock"
     Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.
   - "Flash when lock/unlock"
     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.

**ALARM SYSTEM**

**The concept**
When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system responds to:

▷ Opening a door, the hood or the trunk lid.
▷ Movements in the vehicle interior.
▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e.g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the car.
▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system briefly signals tampering:

▷ Acoustic alarm.
▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

**Switching on and off**
When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched on and off at the same time.

**Door lock with the alarm system switched on**
The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, when the vehicle is unlocked via the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 45.

**Tailgate with the alarm system switched on**
The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the trunk lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again when the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

**Panic mode**
You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

Press button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

**Indicator lamp on the interior rearview mirror**

▷ The indicator lamp flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
   The alarm system is switched on.
▷ Indicator lamp flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:
Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.

▷ The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking:
   The vehicle has not been tampered with.

▷ The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:
   An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor
The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.
The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the car is towed.

Interior motion sensor
The interior is monitored to the height of the seats. The alarm system is switched on together with the interior motion sensor even when the convertible top is open. Falling objects such as leaves can trigger the alarm unintentionally.

Avoiding unintentional alarms
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can be switched off together, such as in the following situations:

▷ In automatic car washes.
▷ In duplex garages.
▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
▷ With animals in the vehicle.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.
The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.
The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

▷ Unlock vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 35.

▷ For Comfort Access: If you have the remote control with you, unlock vehicle using the button on the driver’s side or passenger side door.

POWER WINDOWS

Information

WARNING
Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

If an accident of a certain severity occurs, the windows are automatically closed except a gap.
Overview

Opening

▷ Pull the button to the resistance point. The window opens while the switch is held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point. The window opens automatically. Pressing again stops the motion.

▷ Press the button to the resistance point. All side windows open at the same time, while the switch is being held.

▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point. All side windows open automatically at the same time. Pressing again stops the motion.

See also: Convenient opening, refer to page 38, via remote control.

Closing

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point. The window closes while the switch is held.

▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point. The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

▷ Pull the switch. All side windows close at the same time, while the switch is being held.

See also: Convenient closing, refer to page 39, via remote control.

See also: closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 42.

Pinch protection system

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted. The window reopens slightly.

Closing without the pinch protection system

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.
In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.
   The pinch protection is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain threshold.
2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.
   The window closes without jam protection.

**Malfunction**

**General information**

In certain situations a window can only be operated to a limited extent.

- After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the window can only be operated to a limited extent. The system must be initialized in this case.
- The power window motors are equipped with overheating protection. If a window is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, the overheating protection switches the motor off for approx. five minutes. During this period, the window can only be closed.

**Initializing the system**

The system can be initialized when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

During the initialization, the affected window closes without jam protection.

**WARNING**

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.

1. Open the affected window completely.
2. Pull the switch to the resistance point and hold.
   The window closes.
3. Continue holding the switch pulled to the resistance point.
   Depending on the equipment, the window opens and closes one or twice after approx. 15 seconds.

**CONVERTIBLE TOP WITH INTEGRATED SLIDING SUN ROOF**

**Overview**

Convertible top and sliding sun roof switch

**Sliding sun roof**

**Opening and closing**

Before closing the sliding sun roof, remove any foreign objects from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.
Press the switch backward, until the desired position is reached or the sliding sun roof is fully open.

Press the switch forward, until the desired position is reached or the sliding sun roof is closed.

**Convertible top**

**General information**

The convertible top can be opened or closed at speeds up to approx. 18 mph/30 km/h.

If the vehicle is accelerated above a speed of approx. 18 mph/30 km/h while the convertible top is being moved, the convertible top movement stops.

Observe the following information:

▷ While the convertible top is moving, it is not possible to open the tailgate.

▷ If possible, close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. A closed convertible top protects it from weather-related damage and to some extent from theft.

▷ Even when the convertible top is closed, only store valuables in the locked cargo area.

▷ At higher speeds, vacuum produced in the vehicle interior causes the convertible top to begin to flutter. Increase the amount of air via the automatic climate control so that no vacuum is produced in the vehicle.

▷ It is not possible to start the engine and operate the convertible top simultaneously. When the engine is started using the Start/Stop button or using the Auto Start/Stop function, the convertible top movement is briefly interrupted.

▷ Opening a door interrupts closure of the convertible top.

▷ When loading the cargo area, make sure that the cargo does not push against the cargo area partition, refer to page 50, from below.

▷ In order to protect the battery, move the convertible top only when the engine is running if possible.

▷ Before closing the convertible top, remove any foreign objects from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.

**Information**

▷ The tailgate can normally not be opened if the convertible top is not fully opened or closed. Always open and close the convertible top completely.

▷ If possible, close the convertible top when the vehicle is parked. A closed convertible top protects it from weather-related damage and to some extent from theft.

▷ Even when the convertible top is closed, only store valuables in the locked cargo area.

▷ At higher speeds, vacuum produced in the vehicle interior causes the convertible top to begin to flutter. Increase the amount of air via the automatic climate control so that no vacuum is produced in the vehicle.

▷ It is not possible to start the engine and operate the convertible top simultaneously. When the engine is started using the Start/Stop button or using the Auto Start/Stop function, the convertible top movement is briefly interrupted.

▷ At temperatures below +14 °F/-10 °C, the convertible top cannot be opened.

▷ Opening or closing a door interrupts closing the convertible top.

⚠️ **CAUTION**

Incorrect operation can damage the convertible top and other parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. During operation, heed the following points:
Keep the area of movement of the convertible top clear because the convertible top swivels out upward. Maximum area of movement: 98.5 inches/2.5 meters.

- Do not leave the convertible top open for more than a day while it is wet.
- Do not open the convertible top, if it is wet, covered in snow, iced up, or dirty.
- Do not place objects on the convertible top.
- The rollover protection system may not be triggered.
- Do not operate convertible top on uneven sections of road.
- Always open or close the convertible top completely. The convertible top is only locked in the final positions.
- Make sure that no objects are on the cargo cover when opening the convertible top. ◄

**WARNING**
When opening and closing the convertible top, body parts can be jammed, for example by the mechanism. There is a risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the convertible top is clear during operation. ◄

**WARNING**
When operating the convertible top while driving, the view to the rear may be limited. At speeds above 20 mph/30 km/h the convertible top remains in its current position. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. When operating the convertible top while driving, observe traffic attentively and if necessary, reduce speed. Do not operate while backing up or with wind. ◄

**WARNING**
The convertible top is not suitable for the mounting of roof carrier systems. The roof carrier could come loose. There is a risk of an accident. Do not attach any roof carrier systems to the convertible top. ◄

### Functional requirements
The ignition or radio-ready state must be switched on.

The following requirements must be fulfilled in order to be able to move the convertible top.

- The cargo area partition is stored and latched in the bottom position.
- The tailgate is closed.
- The external temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- The voltage of the vehicle electrical system is sufficient.
- The convertible top drive is not overheating.
- The vehicle speed is not too high.
- The windows can be lowered.

If this requirement is not met, a check control message is displayed.

### Opening and closing from the inside
In order to protect the battery, move the convertible top only when the engine is running if possible.

Before closing the convertible top, remove any foreign objects from the windshield frame; otherwise, closing may be prevented.

Press the switch backward, until the sliding sun roof is open.

Press the switch backward again. The windows are rolled down, and the convertible top opens as long as the switch is pressed. After the convertible top is completely open, the switch can be held or pressed again briefly in order to raise the windows.

Press and hold switch forward. The windows are lowered, the convertible top closes and the windows are raised again as long as the switch is pressed.
Push and hold the switch until the convertible top is completely open or closed and the end of the procedure is indicated by a corresponding Check Control message.

**WARNING**

A convertible top that is not completely open or closed is not locked and can open by itself while driving due to the wind. There is a risk of injuries or a risk of property damage. Make sure that the convertible top is always completely open or closed.

The convertible top movement is interrupted if the switch is released. The sequence can be continued in the desired direction using the switch.

Operate switch again until the convertible operation is terminated.

**Convenient operation from outside**

When equipped with Comfort Access the convertible top can also be operated from outside.

▷ Convenient opening, refer to page 38, via the remote control.
▷ Convenient closing, refer to page 39, via the remote control.
▷ Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 41.

**Cargo area partition**

With the convertible top closed, the cargo area volume can be expanded.

Expanding the cargo area volume, refer to page 158.

**Manually closing the convertible top**

**General information**

If the convertible top has an electrical malfunction, it can be closed manually. Two persons are necessary to do this.

**Safety information**

**WARNING**

The convertible top cannot be locked in the fully open position if there is an electrical malfunction and would raise while driving. There is a risk of an accident. Do not manually open the convertible top. If possible, have an open convertible top manually closed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Before closing**

1. To provide the persons involved with more space, lower the windows fully.
2. Switching off the ignition.
3. Take the hexagon wrench and screwdriver out of the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 208.

**Unlocking the convertible top**

1. Loosen and remove screw, arrow, using the hexagonal wrench.
2. Slide the cover in driving direction, arrow 1, and pull it outward, arrow 2. Next, turn upward in driving direction, arrow 3.
If have difficulties removing the cover, perform step 3 first.

3. Pull sensor from the cover, arrow, and place it on the side trim.

4. Loosen and remove the second screw, arrow, using the hexagonal wrench.

5. Slightly lift the side frame, arrow 1, and pull sensor with cable forward out from the guide, arrow 2.

Swivel the cable out sideward so it cannot be jammed.

6. Unlock the second side frame. The sensor is located on the left side of the vehicle.

Closing the convertible top

1. Grasp the convertible top with two people, with both hands on the two side frames.

2. Lift out the convertible top evenly on both sides and swivel forward onto the windshield panel.

   To lift out the convertible top, pull firmly on the side frame, if necessary.

3. In the vehicle, lift the cover in the center of the roof using the screwdriver.

4. For this purpose, insert the hexagon wrench into the designated receptacle in the center of the roof and press push upward, arrow 1.
WIND DEFLECTOR

The concept
The wind deflector reduces the air movement in the vehicle interior when driving with the convertible top down.

Installation
The wind deflector is located in a protective jacket in the cargo area.

To protect the head restraints from damage, slide the rear head restraints into the upper position prior to installation and removal.

1. Take the wind deflector out of the protective jacket.

   Fully unfold the wind deflector so that the handle, arrow 1, folds down and locks the wind deflector.

2. Open the rear side window if necessary.

   Insert wind deflector from one side of the vehicle with the pins in the corresponding fixing points on the opposite side of the vehicle.

5. Pull of the locking elements from the pins on the left and right side of the side frames, arrow.

6. Insert the pins on the side frames into the receptacles on the windshield frame.

7. Turn the hexagon wrench clockwise to close the side frame lock.

8. Continue turning the hexagon wrench clockwise to close the sliding sun roof.
3. To release the lock, fold the handle up and hold it.

4. Press the wind deflector inwardly and up, arrow 1, to the extent that the wind deflector can be positioned in front of the fixing points on the installation side.
Release the handle.
Press the wind deflector downward, while inserting the pins in the corresponding fixing points, arrows 2.

5. Press the wind deflector downward in the middle, until the handle engages, arrows 1.
Grasp the inner framework of the wind deflector and fold it up, arrow 2.

⚠️ **CAUTION**
When moving the front seats back, the wind deflector can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement is clear prior to moving the front seats back.

**Removing**
Proceed in reverse sequence.

⚠️ **WARNING**
Body parts can be jammed on operating the wind deflector. There is a risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement around the wind deflector is clear when installing and removing it and folding it up.
ADJUSTING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

SITTING SAFELY

The ideal seating position meeting the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

The seating position plays an important role in an accident in combination with:
▷ Safety belts, refer to page 56.
▷ Head restraints, refer to page 58.
▷ Airbags, refer to page 105.

SEATS

Information

⚠️ WARNING
Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠️ WARNING
With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a danger of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Adjusting seats

Overview

1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Height
4 Backrest tilt
Forward/backward
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.
After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Height
Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed to reach the desired height.

Backrest tilt
Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Lumbar support
The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

Thigh support
Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Entering the rear

Information

⚠️ WARNING
There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

⚠️ WARNING
Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to an unlocked backrest. Vehicle control could be lost. There is
a risk of injuries. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving.

Fold down seat back
1. Pull lever up to the stop.
2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

Original position
The driver's seat features a mechanical memory function for forward/back and backrest adjustment.
1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.
If the backrest is folded back when the seat is not yet in the original position, the seat latches in the current position. In this case, manually adjust longitudinal direction, refer to page 55.

Front seat heating

Overview

Switching on
Press button once for each temperature level.
The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.
If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.
When GREEN Mode, refer to page 174, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Switching off
Press and hold the button, until the LEDs are no longer illuminated.

SAFETY BELTS

Number of safety belts
The vehicle is fitted with four safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

General information
Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off.
For the occupants' safety the belt locking mechanism triggers early. Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when applying it.
Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

Information
WARNING
If the safety belt is used by more than one person, the protective effect of the safety belt cannot be ensured anymore. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed in an occu-
pant’s lap, but must be transported and respec-
tively secured in designated child restraint
systems.⚠️

⚠️ WARNING
The protective effect of the safety belts
can be limited or lost when safety belts are fas-
tened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety
belt can cause additional injuries, e.g., in the
event of an accident or during braking and eva-
sive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or dan-
ger to life. Make sure that all occupants are
wearing safety belts correctly.⚠️

Correct use of safety belts
▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and as tight
to your body as possible over your lap and
shoulders.
▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over
your lap. The safety belt may not press on
your stomach.
▷ Do not wear the safety belt on your throat,
rub it on sharp edges, guide it or jam it in
across hard or fragile objects.
▷ Avoid thick clothing.
▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently up-
ward around your upper body.

Buckling the seat belt
Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in
the belt buckle.

Unbuckling the safety belt
1. Hold the safety belt firmly.

2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up
mechanism.

Rear belt guide
When fastening the safety belts on the rear
seats, make sure that the belt guide loop is
closed.

Safety belt reminder for driver’s seat
and front passenger seat
The indicator lamp lights up and a sig-
nal sounds. Make sure that the safety
belts are positioned correctly. The
safety belt reminder is active at speeds above
approx. 6 mph/10 km/h. It can also be acti-
vated if objects are placed on the front passen-
ger seat.

Damage to safety belts
⚠️ WARNING
The protective effect of the safety belts
may not be fully functional or fail in the follow-
ing situations:
▷ Safety belts are damaged, soiled or
changed in any other way.
▷ Safety belt buckle is damaged or heavily
soiled.
▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were
modified.
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

FRONT HEAD RERAINTS

Information

WARNING
A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.◀

WARNING
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.
▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
▷ Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
▷ Do not use any accessories, e.g., pillows, while driving.◀

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.
Adjust the headrest via the backrest tilt as needed.

Height
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Distance
Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.

Adjusting the height: John Cooper Works sport seat
The height of the head restraints cannot be adjusted.

Adjusting the height

To raise: pull.
To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push headrest down.

Removing: John Cooper Works sport seat
The head restraints cannot be removed.
Removing

1. Pull head restraint up as far as possible.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

To remove the head restraint, fold the backrest rearward if it is in the upright position.

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Information

WARNING
A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury. Install head restraints on occupied seats prior to driving and make sure that the center of the head restraint supports the back of the head at eye level.

WARNING
Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
Do not hang objects, e.g., clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.

Correctly adjusted head restraint

General information
A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of injury to cervical vertebrae in the event of an accident.

Height
Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approximately at eye level.

Adjusting the height

To raise: push.
To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push head restraint down.

Removing
Fold the rear backrest down, refer to page 159, before removing the head restraint, otherwise the head restraint cannot be removed.
1. Pull head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.

MIRRORS

Exterior mirrors

General information
The mirror on the passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

Information

WARNING
Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, e.g., while changing lanes. There is risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

1. Adjusting  60
2. Left/right, Automatic Curb Monitor
3. Fold in and out  61

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:
Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

The setting corresponds to the direction in which the button is pressed.

Adjusting manually
In case of electrical malfunction press edges of mirror.

Automatic Curb Monitor

The concept
If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for example.

Activating

1. Slide the switch to the driver’s side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.
Deactivating
Slide the switch to the passenger side mirror position.

Fold in and out

ATTENTION
Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press button.

Possible at speeds up to approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is advantageous in the following situations:
▷ In car washes.
▷ On narrow roads.
▷ For folding mirrors back out that were folded away manually.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating
Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature
The exterior mirror on the driver’s side is automatically dimmed. Photocells are used to control the interior mirror, refer to page 61.

Interior mirror, manually dimmable

Flip lever

To reduce the blinding effect of the interior rear view mirror, flip the lever forward.

Turn knob

Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Overview

Photocells are used for control:
In the mirror glass.
On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements
- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

STEERING WHEEL

Information

WARNING
Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Adjusting

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Fold the lever down.
3. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
4. Fold the lever back.
5. Switch off the ignition again if needed.
TRANSPORTING CHILDREN SAFELY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

THE RIGHT PLACE FOR CHILDREN

Information

⚠️ WARNING
Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Children should always be in the rear

⚠️ WARNING
Children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm cannot correctly fasten the safety belt without suitable additional restraint systems. The protective effect of the safety belts can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable restraint systems.

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Only transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm in the rear in suitable child restraint systems provided in accordance with the age, weight and size of the child.

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight and size.

Children on the front passenger seat

Before using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, ensure that the front, knee, and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 107.

Information

⚠️ WARNING
Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.
**On the front passenger seat**

**Deactivating airbags**

⚠ **WARNING**

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 107.

**Seat position and height**

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust its height to the highest and thus best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible belt guide position is reached.

**Child seat security**

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.
Locking the safety belt
1. Pull out the strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt
1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Information
LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.
Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors
The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Information
WARNING
If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.

Position
The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols. It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems
Pull the belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint systems
1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Upper LATCH retaining strap
For Canadian customers Only.
The following statement is required by Transport Canada:
This vehicle is not equipped with user-ready tether anchorages. As such neither a child restraint system, nor a booster cushion, requiring the use of a tether strap can be properly secured in the vehicle.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

START/STOP BUTTON

The concept
Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

Steptronic transmission: the engine starts in selector lever position P or N with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on
Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition off
Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

Steptronic transmission: shift to selector lever position P, press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

▷ During locking, also with the low beams activated.
▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started. This function is only available when the low beams are turned off.
▷ When opening and closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are turned off.
▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.
▷ The low beams switch to parking lights after approx. 15 minutes of no use.

Radio ready state
Activate radio-ready state: when the engine is running: press the Start/Stop button.

Some electronic systems/power consumers remain ready for operation.

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:
After approx. 8 minutes.

When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.

Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

The radio-ready state remains active if, for example, the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- Opening or closing the driver's door.
- Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

If the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on, the system automatically switches to the radio-ready state if the lights are turned off or, if correspondingly equipped, the daytime running lights are activated.

**STARTING THE ENGINE**

**Information**

**DANGER**

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

**WARNING**

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.

On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.

On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.

**ATTENTION**

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.

**Steptronic transmission**

**Starting the engine**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Engage selector lever position P or N.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

**Manual transmission**

**Starting the engine**

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a certain time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.
ENGINE STOP

Information

WARNING
Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
▷ Releasing the parking brake.
▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.

Before driving into a car wash
So that the vehicle can roll into a car wash observe instructions for going into an automatic car wash, refer to page 226.

Steptronic transmission

Switching off the engine
1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.
   The engine is switched off.
   The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine
1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
   The engine is switched off.
   The radio-ready state is switched on.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

AUTO START/STOP FUNCTION

The concept
The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for example, in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

Information
After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state, refer to page 70. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph, approx. 5 km/h.

Depending on the selected driving mode, refer to page 124, the system is automatically activated or deactivated.
Engine stop
The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:
▷ Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Steptronic transmission:
▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
▷ Brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.
▷ The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

In order to be able to release the brake pedal, engage lever in position P. The engine remains off.
To continue driving depress the brake pedal. When a gear is engaged, the engine starts automatically.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster
The display indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an Automatic engine start.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Functional limitations
The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:
▷ External temperature too low.

▷ The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
▷ The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
▷ The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
▷ The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
▷ After driving in reverse.
▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
▷ At higher elevations.
▷ The engine compartment lid is unlocked.
▷ The parking assistant is activated.
▷ Stop-and-go traffic.
▷ Selector lever in selector lever position R, N or M/S.

Starting the engine
The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:
▷ Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.
▷ Steptronic transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode
After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:
▷ The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
▷ The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.
The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.
Functional limitations
Even if driving off was not intended, the deacti-
vated engine starts up automatically in the fol-
lowing situations:
▷ Excessive warming of the car's interior when the cooling function is switched on.
▷ The steering wheel is turned.
▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position D to R, N or M/S.
▷ Steptronic transmission: change from selector lever position P to R, N, D or M/S.
▷ The vehicle begins rolling.
▷ Fogging of the windows when the automatic climate control is switched on.
▷ The vehicle battery charge is very low.
▷ Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
▷ Manual transmission: low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for example, if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Switching the system on/off
Using the button
Press button.
▷ LED comes on: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
   The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
▷ LED goes out: Auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop
During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, e.g., when leaving it.
Steptronic transmission:
1. Engage selector lever position P.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
3. Set the parking brake.
Manual transmission:
1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.
   Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation
In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop func-
tion is deactivated automatically for safety rea-
sions, as it is detected that no driver is present.

Malfunction
The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
PARKING BRAKE

Information

⚠️ WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.

Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

If for once use during driving is required, engage the parking brake slightly and hold the button down.

To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

Releasing

Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

TURN SIGNAL, HIGH BEAMS, HEADLIGHT FLASHER

Turn signal

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

The turn signal lever returns into is starting position after actuation.

To switch off manually, slightly tap the lever to the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Slightly tap lever.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

On the Control Display:

1. 🏷 "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Triple turn signal"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**Signaling briefly**
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

**Malfunction**
Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

**High beams, headlight flasher**

- High beams, arrow 1.
- Headlight flasher, arrow 2.

**WARNING**
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

**ATTENTION**
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

**Switching on**

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

- Normal wiper speed: tap up once.
  The wipers switch to intermittent operation when the vehicle is stationary.
- Fast wiper speed: tap up twice or tap once beyond the resistance point.
  Wipers change to normal speed when vehicle comes to standstill.

**WASHER/WIPER SYSTEM**

**Switching the wipers on/off and brief wipe**

**General information**
Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.
Switching off and brief wipe

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

▷ Brief wipe: press down once.
▷ To switch off from normal wiper speed: press down once.
▷ To switch off from fast wiper speed: press down twice.

Interval mode or rain sensor

The concept

Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall. The sensor is located on the windshield, directly behind the interior mirror.

Activating/deactivating

Press button on the wiper lever.

Wiping is started. If the vehicle is equipped with a rain sensor: LED in wiper lever lights up.

When wipers are frozen to windshield, wiper operation is deactivated.

During trip interruption with the rain sensor switched on: if the trip is resumed within approx. 15 minutes, the rain sensor is automatically activated again.

⚠ ATTENTION

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of damage to property. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor

Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Washing the windshield

Pull the wiper lever towards you.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.
**WARNING**
The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is risk of an accident. Only use the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.

**ATTENTION**
When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

**Windshield washer nozzles**
The windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated while the ignition is switched on.

**Fold-away position of the wipers**
Helpful, when changing the wiper blades or when folding out under frosty conditions, for example.

**WARNING**
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. With icy conditions make sure that blades are not frozen to the windshield.
3. Press the wiper lever up beyond the point of resistance and hold it for approx. 3 seconds, until the wipers remain in a nearly vertical position.
4. Lift the wiper all the way off of the windshield.

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Switch on the ignition.

2. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

**WASHER FLUID**

**General information**
All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir. Prepare and dilute a mixture of tap water, windshield washer concentrate, and possibly antifreeze prior to filling. Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.2 US gal/1 liter.

**Information**

**WARNING**
Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is risk of fire and a risk of injury. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: The washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW’s Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

**WARNING**
Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.
ATTENTION
Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid. ◄

ATTENTION
Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze agents. Observe the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers. ◄

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Overview
The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION
Information
CAUTION
When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right. ◄

WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:
▷ Set the parking brake.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock. ◄

Shifting
General information
The engine speed during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear
Select only when the vehicle is stationary.
To overcome the resistance push the selector lever dynamically to the left and engage the reverse gear.

STEPTRONIC TRANSMISSION
Information
WARNING
An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:
▷ Set the parking brake.
On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.

On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.

Selector lever positions

D Drive
Selector lever position for normal vehicle operation. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

R Reverse
Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral
The vehicle may roll. Use in automatic car washes, for example.

P Park
Select only when the vehicle is stationary. The drive wheels are blocked.

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that selector lever position P is set. Otherwise, the vehicle may begin to move.

Kickdown
Kickdown is used to achieve maximum driving performance. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Engaging selector lever positions

General information
To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to start.

The selector lever can only be taken out of selector lever position P if the ignition is on or the engine is running.

With the vehicle stationary, depress the brake pedal before shifting out of selector lever position P or N; otherwise, the shift block will not be deactivated and the shift command will not be executed.

Releasing the selector lever lock
A lock prevents the inadvertent switching to selector lever position R or the inadvertent change from selector lever position P.

Releasing the lock: press unlock button on the front of the selector lever, see arrow.

Sport program and manual mode M/S

Activating the sport program

Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example, S1.

The sport program of the transmission is activated.
Activating the M/S manual mode
1. Press the selector lever to the left out of selector lever position D.
2. Push the selector lever forward or backward.

Manual mode M/S becomes active and the gear is changed.
The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, for example, M1.
If the situation requires, the Steptronic transmission continues to shift automatically.
Example: once maximum engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.

Switching to manual mode
▷ To shift down: press the selector lever forward.
▷ To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.
The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the currently selected gear.

Manual mode M/S: prevent automatic upshifting
Once a particular engine speed is attained, M/S manual mode is automatically upshifted as needed.
For vehicles with Steptronic Sport transmission, automatic shift operations are not performed if one of the following conditions is met:
▷ DSC is deactivated.
▷ TRACTION is activated.

In addition, there is no downshifting for kickdown.
With the respective transmission version, the lowest possible gear can be selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddles. This is not possible, when switching briefly via the shift paddles from selector lever position D to manual mode M/S.

Ending the sport program/manual mode
Push the selector lever to the right.
D is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Shift paddles for Steptronic Sport transmission
The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to shift gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.
▷ Shift up: briefly pull right shift paddle.
▷ Shift down: briefly pull left shift paddle.
▷ The lowest possible gear can be selected by pulling and holding the left shift paddles.

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds, for example downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.
The selected gear is briefly displayed in the instrument cluster, followed by the current gear.
If the shift paddles on the steering wheel are used to shift gears in automatic mode, the transmission switches to manual mode temporarily in selector lever position D and permanently in selector lever position S.
In selector lever position D, after conservative driving for a certain amount of time in manual mode or if there has been no acceleration or shifting of the shift paddles within a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to automatic mode.
It is possible to switch from manual mode into the automatic mode at any time:

▷ Pull and hold right shift paddle.
Or
▷ In addition to the briefly pulled right shift paddle, briefly pull the left shift paddle.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example: P.

Manually release the transmission lock

Should the selector lever be blocked in selector lever position P despite the ignition being turned on, the brake being depressed and the unlock button being pressed, the transmission lock can be manually canceled:

Before unlocking the transmission lock manually, engage the parking brake forcefully to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

1. Loosen the selector lever sleeve together with the lower retaining ring and possibly the Driving Dynamics Control from the center console. For this purpose, pull the retaining ring and possibly the Driving Dynamics Control upward on the rear edge.

2. Lift the sleeve. Unplug the cable connector if needed.

3. Using the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 208, press the yellow release lever downward, see arrow.

4. Move the selector lever slightly toward the rear; to do this press the unlock button on the front of the selector lever.
Release the release lever.

5. Bring the selector lever into the desired position.

Steptronic Sport transmission: Launch Control

The concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 166, period.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode, refer to page 122.

Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.
To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

**Start with launch control**

While the engine is running:

1. Press button and select SPORT with Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 124.
   The instrument cluster displays TRACTION in combination with SPORT. The DSC OFF indicator lamp lights up.

2. Engage selector lever position S.

3. With the left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.

4. Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.
   A flag symbol is displayed in the instrument cluster.

5. The starting engine speed adjusts. Within 3 seconds, release the brake.

Before using Launch Control again, allow the transmission to cool down for approx. 5 minutes.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Overview, instrument cluster

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Tachometer 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Indicator/warning lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Speedometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Fuel gauge 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Display/reset miles 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Electronic displays 81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Electronic displays

1 Driver assistance systems
   Messages, for example, Check Control
   Time  85
   External temperature  85
   Selection lists  89
   Total miles/trip odometer  85

2 Onboard computer  89
   Selector lever position  75
   Gear shift indicator  87

3 Status, Driving Dynamics Control  124
   Status

CHECK CONTROL

The concept
The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and text messages in the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

In addition, an acoustic signal may be output and a text message may appear on the Control Display.

Indicator/warning lights

General information
The indicator and warning lights can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.
Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder
Flashin}{o| iluminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also
be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

**Airbag system**

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working. Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Parking brake, brake system**

The parking brake is set. For additional information, refer to Release parking brake, refer to page 71.

**Front-end collision warning**

Illuminated: advance warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small. Increase distance. Flashing: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed. Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

**Pedestrian warning**

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

**Orange lights**

**Active Cruise Control**

The number bars shows the selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead. For more information, see Camera-based cruise control, refer to page 126.

**Vehicle detection, Active Cruise Control**

Illuminated: vehicle driving ahead detected. Flashing: the conditions are not adequate for operating the system. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

**Yellow lights**

**Anti-lock Braking System ABS**

Avoid sudden braking as much as possible. Braking force boost may not be working. Stop cautiously. Take into account the longer brake distance. Have the system immediately checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**DSC Dynamic Stability Control**

Flashing: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and adapt driving style to the driving circumstances. Illuminated: DSC failed. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control DSC, refer to page 122.
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is deactivated or Dynamic Traction Control (DTC) is activated.

DSC/Dynamic Stability Control DSC is switched off or Dynamic Traction Control (DTC) is switched on.

For additional information, refer to Dynamic Stability Control (DSC), refer to page 122, and Dynamic Traction Control (DTC), refer to page 123.

Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

For additional information, refer to Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 113.

Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)

Illuminated: the Tire Pressure Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flashing and then continuously illuminated: no flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.

▷ A wheel without TPM electronics is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.

▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 109.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the steering system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine functions

Have the vehicle checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

For additional information, refer to On-board Diagnostics socket, refer to page 207.

Rear fog lamp

Rear fog lights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Rear fog lights, refer to page 103.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

For additional information, refer to Turn signal, refer to page 71.

Parking lights, headlight control

Parking lights or headlights are activated.

For additional information, refer to Parking lights/low beams, headlight control, refer to page 100.
Front fog lights
Front fog lights are activated.
For additional information, refer to Front fog lights, refer to page 103.

High-beam Assistant
High-beam Assistant is switched on.
High beams are activated and off automatically as a function of the traffic situation.
For additional information, refer to High-beam Assistant, refer to page 102.

Cruise control
The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

Blue lights
High beams
High beams are activated.
For additional information, refer to High beams, refer to page 72.

General lamps
At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

Text messages
Text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator and warning lights.

Supplementary text messages
Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Symbols
Within the supplementary text, the following functions can be selected independent of the check control message.


▷ "Service request"
Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

▷ "Roadside Assistance"
Contact Roadside Assistance.

Hiding Check Control messages
Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

▷ Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.
These messages can be faded for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

▷ Other Check Control messages are faded automatically after approx. 20 seconds. They are stored and can be displayed again later.
Displaying stored Check Control messages

On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

FUEL GAUGE

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.
The arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.
Information on refueling, refer to page 182.

TACHOMETER

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is interrupted to protect the engine.

ODOMETER AND TRIP ODOMETER

The concept
Odometer and trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Resetting the trip odometer

Press the knob.
▷ The odometer is displayed when the ignition is switched off.
▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C, a signal sounds.
A Check Control message is displayed.
There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

WARNING
Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a danger of icy roads, e.g., on bridges or shady sections of road. There is risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

TIME

The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.
Setting the time on the Control Display, refer to page 93.

DATE

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.
Set the date on the Control Display, refer to page 93.
**RANGE**

Display

With a low remaining range:
▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
▷ The remaining range is shown on the onboard computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, for example taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

**ATTENTION**

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

**Displaying the cruising range**

1. 🌍 "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Range"

**CURRENT FUEL CONSUMPTION**

**The concept**

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

**Displaying the current fuel consumption**

1. 🌍 "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "Current consumption"

**SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

**The concept**

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

**Display**

**Detailed information on service requirements**

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

1. 🌍 "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. 🌍 "Service required"

Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.

4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

**Symbols**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>No service is currently required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📦</td>
<td>The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>📦</td>
<td>The service deadline has already passed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Entering appointment dates**

Enter the dates for the required inspections. Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "§ Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Adjust the settings.
7. Confirm.
   The entered date is stored.

GEAR SHIFT INDICATOR

The concept
The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information
Depending on the vehicle's features and country version of the vehicle, the gear shift indicator is active in the manual mode of the Steptronic transmission and with manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

Manual transmission: displaying

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Fuel efficient gear is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 4</td>
<td>Shift into fuel efficient gear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Steptronic transmission: displaying

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M3</td>
<td>Fuel efficient gear is set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 4</td>
<td>Shift into fuel efficient gear.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SPEED LIMIT DETECTION

The concept

Speed limit detection
Speed limit detection shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster. The camera at the base of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc. are also detected and compared with the vehicle’s onboard data, such as for the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation.

With the navigation system, the system takes into account the information stored in the navigation data and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

Without a navigation system, the system is subject to limitations imposed by technology. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limitations due to entering or exiting towns, highway signs, etc. are not displayed. Speed limits with extra text characters are always displayed.

Information
Speed limits when towing a trailer are not shown.
WARNING
The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess visibility and traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

Overview

Camera
The camera is installed near the interior mirror. Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior mirror clean and clear.

Display
Speed limit detection is displayed via the onboard computer.

Press button on the turn signal lever several times if needed.

Speed limit detection is displayed on the CID (central information display) in the instrument cluster.

Speed limit detection

The last speed limit detected.

Without a navigation system the traffic signals are grayed out after curves or longer stretches of roadway.

With navigation system: speed limit detection is not available.

Without navigation system: no speed limit or cancellation is detected.

Speed limit detection can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.

System limits
The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, rain or snowfall.
▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
▷ When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.
ON-BOARD COMPUTER

Calling up information on the info display

Press and hold button on blinker lever. Information is displayed in the info display of the instrument cluster.

Information at a glance

CID (central information display)

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the CID (central information display):

▷ Range.
▷ GREEN Info.
  When GREEN Mode is activated.
▷ Average fuel consumption.
▷ Current fuel consumption.
▷ Average speed.
▷ Date.
▷ Engine temperature display.
▷ Always Open Timer.
▷ With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:
  Distance to destination.
  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
  With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation:

Display

Activating a list and adjusting the setting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Button on the steering wheel</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✦</td>
<td>Activate the respective list and select the desired settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OK</td>
<td>Confirm the selection.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Selection lists in the instrument cluster

The concept

With the buttons on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster the following can be displayed or operated:

▷ Current audio source.
▷ Redial phone feature.
▷ Turn on voice activation system.
Time of arrival.
When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
▷ Speed limit detection.
▷ Speed.
The unit of some information can be changed.
Setting units, refer to page 93.

Selecting information
You can select what information from the onboard computer is to be displayed on the CID (central information display) of the instrument cluster.
On the Control Display:
1. 🗖 "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. Select the desired information.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Information in detail

Range
Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.
It is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

GREEN info
Description of GREEN info, refer to page 176.

Average fuel consumption
This is calculated for the period while the engine is running.
The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the onboard computer.

Average speed
Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values
Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

Engine temperature display
Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and motor oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.
If the engine oil or coolant, thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed.
Check the coolant level, refer to page 204.

Always Open Timer
The Always Open Timer displays the current driving time and total driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.
Always Open Timer on the Control Display, refer to page 97.
Resetting the Always Open Timer

Resetting the current driving time: press button on the turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds with the driving times displayed.

With equipment version with Head-up Display and navigation: distance to destination
The distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.
The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Display on the Control Display
Display the onboard computer or trip onboard computer on the Control Display.

Resetting the fuel consumption and speed
On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"
3. "Consumpt." or "Speed"
4. "Yes"

DRIVING EXCITEMENT

The concept
On the Control Display, sport instruments can be displayed, and the vehicle condition can be checked before the use of the SPORT program.

Sport instruments
On the Control Display, values for power and torque are displayed.

Displaying sport instruments
Via onboard monitor:
1. "Vehicle info"

Trip onboard computer
The vehicle features two types of onboard computers.

- "Onboard info": the values can be reset as often as necessary.
- "Trip computer": the values provide an overview of the current trip.
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. ( icon) "Sports instruments"

Via the Driving Dynamics Control
1. Activating SPORT.
2. ( icon) "Driving Excitement"
3. ( icon) "Sports instruments"

Vehicle state
The following vehicle and surrounding area data are automatically checked and evaluated in succession:
▷ Range.
▷ Engine temperature.
▷ External temperature.
▷ SPORT program state.

Finally, a total evaluation of the vehicle state is displayed.

Checking vehicle state
Via onboard monitor:
1. ( icon) "Vehicle info"
2. "Driving Excitement"
3. ( icon) "Vehicle and surroundings"

Via the Driving Dynamics Control
1. Activating SPORT.
2. ( icon) "Driving Excitement"
3. ( icon) "Vehicle and surroundings"

Displaying, setting or changing the limit
On the Control Display:
1. ( icon) "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning at:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired limit is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.

The speed limit is stored.

Activating/deactivating the limit
On the Control Display:
1. ( icon) "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Warning"
4. Press the Controller.

Setting your current speed as the limit
On the Control Display:
1. ( icon) "Settings"
2. "Speed"
3. "Select current speed"
4. Press the Controller.

The current vehicle speed is stored as the limit.

SPEED WARNING

The concept
Displays speed limit which, when reached, should cause a warning to be issued.

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit once by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

TIME

Setting the time zone
1. ( icon) "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time zone:"
4. Select the desired time zone.
The time zone is stored.

Setting the time
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Time:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
7. Press the Controller.
The time is stored.

Setting the time format
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The time format is stored.

Date

Setting the date
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Date:"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
5. Press the Controller.
6. Make the necessary settings for the month and year.
The date is stored.

Setting the date format
1. "Settings"
2. "Time/Date"
3. "Format:"
4. Select the desired format.
The date format is stored.

Language

Setting the language
To set the language on the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. "Language:"
4. Select the desired language.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog
Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 27.

Units of measurement

Setting the units of measurement
To set the units for fuel consumption, route/distance and temperature:
1. "Settings"
2. "Language/Units"
3. Select the desired menu item.
4. Select the desired unit.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Brightness.

Setting the brightness
To set the brightness of the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the Controller.
LED RING ON THE CENTRAL INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

The concept
The LED ring displays light animations to represent specific functions.

Basic displays
Basic functions, for example the tachometer, can be set to be displayed continually if so desired.

Event displays
Functions that are only displayed temporarily, for example the volume or temperature settings, can be set as event displays.
Several vehicle assistance functions can also be displayed on the LED ring. This display corresponds with the displays of the function in the respective display.

Example: tachometer
Like the tachometer in the instrument cluster, the light animations of the tachometer’s basic display show the current RPMs and the respective RPM warning margins.

Display

Switching on/off LED ring
1. "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Center Instrument"

Adjusting the LED ring
1. "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Basic display" or "Event display"
4. Select desired setting.

Setting the brightness
The brightness can be adjusted when night lighting is active in the instrument cluster.
1. "Settings"
2. "Center Instrument"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the controller.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

HEAD-UP DISPLAY

The concept
This system projects important information into the driver’s field of vision, e.g., the speed.
The driver can quickly absorb information and concentrate on the traffic situation.

Information

The Head-up Display consists of sensitive components that can easily be scraped or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place any objects on the Head-up Display,
attach to system components or plug into the system. Do not move the moving parts manually.

⚠️ **WARNING**
When extending and retracting the projection screen of the Head-up Display, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the projection screen is clear during opening and closing.

Follow the instructions for cleaning the Head-up Display, refer to page 230.

**Overview**

**Display visibility**
The visibility of the displays in the Head-up Display is influenced by the following factors:
- Certain sitting positions.
- Objects on the cover of the Head-up Display.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet roads.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

**Switching on/off**
When switching on, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is extended. When switching off, the projection lens of the Head-up Display is retracted again.

---

**Display**

**Overview**
The following information is displayed on the Head-up Display:
- Speed.
- Navigation system.
- Check Control messages.
- Selection list from the instrument cluster.
- Driver assistance systems.
Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

**Selecting displays in the Head-up Display**
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. Select the desired displays in the Head-up Display.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**Setting the brightness**
The brightness is automatically adjusted to the ambient brightness.
The basic setting can be adjusted manually.
On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Brightness"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired brightness is set.
5. Press the Controller.

When the low beams are activated, the brightness of the Head-up Display can be additionally influenced using the instrument lighting, refer to page 103.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**John Cooper Works: Sport displays in the Head-up Display**

**General information**
The sport displays in the Head-up Display assist with a sporty driving style.

**Switching on**
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

With navigation system: if the sport displays are switched on, no navigation content will be displayed on the Head-up Display.

**Display**

1. Speed
2. Shift point indicator
3. Gear display
4. Current engine speed
5. Warning field, speed

**Setting the rotation**
The screen of the Head-up Display can be rotated around its own axis.

On the Control Display:

1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Rotation"
4. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is selected.
5. Press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

**Shift point indicator**

**The concept**
Shift point indicator in the Head-up Display indicates the optimum shifting point. Thus, with a sporty driving style, the best possible vehicle acceleration is achieved.
Functional requirements
▷ Steptronic transmission:
  Manual mode M/S and if necessary the Dynamic Traction Control DTC are activated.
▷ Press the gas pedal all the way down.

Switching on
Shift point indicators are displayed in the Head-up if the sport displays, refer to page 96, are switched on.
1. "Settings"
2. "Head-Up Display"
3. "Displayed information"
4. "Sport displays"

Display
Successive gray illuminated fields indicate the upcoming upshift moment.
As soon as the red fields light up, shift up immediately.
When the permitted maximum speed is reached, all shift point indicators flash.
When the maximum speed is exceeded, the supply of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Displaying the Always Open Timer
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Always Open"

Display
The following information is displayed on the Control Display:
▷ Current driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.
▷ Total driving time with the convertible top open in minutes and hours.
▷ Current external temperature while driving with the convertible top open.

Maximum 99 hours and 59 minutes are displayed for the current driving time, and maximum 999 hours and 59 minutes for the total driving time.

Resetting the current driving time
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Always Open"
3. "Reset trip"
To reset the current driving time, contact your service center.

ALWAYS OPEN TIMER

The concept
The Always Open Timer displays the driving times with open convertible top on the Control Display and in the onboard computer, refer to page 89.

General information
With the respective equipment, the Always Open Timer can also be displayed as light animation on the LED ring of the central instrument cluster.

CHRONO PACKAGE IN THE COCKPIT

The concept
The Chrono package consists of three display instruments in the cockpit, where the engine oil pressure, the turbocharger boost, and the time are displayed. In addition, intermediate and total times can be measured using the stopwatch.

The display elements of the Chrono package mainly support a sporty driving style, e.g., on racetracks.
Overview

1. Engine oil pressure display
2. Display of turbocharger boost
3. Time/stop watch

Engine oil pressure
The current engine oil pressure is displayed. At low temperatures, there can be an increase in the engine oil pressure.

Turbocharger boost
The current boost of the engine's turbocharger is displayed.

Stop watch

General information
The stop watch contains the following features:
- Measuring the total time.
- Measuring and storing of up to nine lap times.
- Displaying the time.
- The red indicator light indicates that the stop watch is active.

Overview, buttons

- MODE button, arrow 1.
- START/STOP button, arrow 2.
- RESET/LAP buttons, arrow 3.

Displaying the measured times
The times measured using the stop watch are shown in minutes and seconds on the display. For times greater than 60 minutes, the numbers of hours and the minutes with seconds are alternatively displayed.

If the stop watch is running, the seconds are also shown using a seconds pointer in the scale of the display element.

Measuring the total time
1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 2, again to stop the stop watch.

Lap times

General information
It is possible to measure and store up to nine lap times. Older lap times are overwritten.

Measuring and storing a lap time
1. Press button, arrow 2, to start the stop watch.
2. Press button, arrow 3, to measure and store a lap time.
   The lap time is briefly shown in the display and via the seconds pointer of the stop
watch, for example, LAP 1 with the measured time. The stop watch continues running in the background.

3. If needed, press button, arrow 3, again to measure a further lap time.

**Calling up lap times**

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.

2. Press button, arrow 2, to call up the individual lap times.

**Deleting lap times**

1. Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until LAP 1 is shown on the display.

2. Press button, arrow 3, to delete all stored lap times.

**Displaying the time**

The time is copied from the instrument cluster.

Press button, arrow 1, repeatedly until the time is displayed.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

OVERVIEW

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Light functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🕯️</td>
<td>Rear fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🕯️</td>
<td>Front fog lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🕯️</td>
<td>Automatic headlamp control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARKING LIGHTS, LOW BEAMS AND ROADSIDE PARKING LIGHTS

General information

Position of switch: 🕯️, 🕯️, 🕯️

If the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off at these switch settings.

Parking lights

Position of switch: 🕯️

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, the battery may become discharged and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

When parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking lamp, refer to page 101.

Low beams

Position of switch: 🕯️

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.
Roadside parking lights

The concept
The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Switching on
With the ignition switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point for approx. 2 seconds.

Switching off
Briefly press the lever to the resistance point in the opposite direction.

Welcome lights and headlight courtesy delay feature

Welcome lights

General information
Depending on the equipment, when switching off the vehicle, switch position 🚀 or 🚕.
Depending on the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly, when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating
1. 🚤 "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Welcome lights"

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information
The low beams stay lit for a short while if the headlight flasher is switched on after the vehicle's radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration
1. 🚤 "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Pathway lighting:"
4. Set length of time.
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Automatic headlamp control

The concept
The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information
A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.
When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

Activating
Position of switch: 🚤
The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated, when the low beams are switched on.
**System limits**
The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.
E.g. the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

**DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS**

**General information**
Position of switch: 0,  De,  ,  
The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position  De  .

**Activating/deactivating**
In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.
On the Control Display:
1.  "Settings"
2.  "Lighting"
3.  "Daytime running lamps"
Settings are stored for the remote control currently used.

**CORNERING LIGHT**

**General information**
Position of switch:  
When going around corners, the cornering light also lights the interior area of the curve. Below a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h when the turn signal is switched on and the steering angle is detected, there is automatic activation.

**Malfunction**
A Check Control message is displayed.
Cornering light is malfunctioning or has failed.
Have the system immediately checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**HIGH-BEAM ASSISTANT**

**The concept**
The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation. The assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

**General information**
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, e.g., in towns and cities.
The driver can intervene at any time and switch the high beams on and off as usual.

**Activating**
1. Depending on the equipment, turn the light switch into position  De  or  .
2. Press button on the turn signal lever, arrow.
The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated, when the low beams are switched on.

The high beams are switched on and off automatically.

The blue indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

**Deactivating**

The High-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 72.

To reactivate the High-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

**System limits**

The High-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. Therefore, manually switch off the high beams in situations where required to avoid a safety risk.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield behind the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

**FOG LIGHTS**

**Front fog lights**

The low beams must be switched on.

Press button. The green indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 101, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the front fog lights.

When the high beams or headlight flasher are activated, the front fog lights are not switched on.

**Rear fog lights**

The low beams or front fog lights must be switched on.

Press button. The yellow indicator lamp lights up.

If the automatic headlight control, refer to page 101, is activated, the low beams will come on automatically when you switch on the rear fog lights.

**INSTRUMENT LIGHTING**

**Adjusting**

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.
INTERIOR LIGHTS

General information
Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lamps, and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically. Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1 Interior lights
2 Reading lights
3 Ambient light

Switching the interior lights on and off
Press button.
To switch off permanently: press the button for approx. 3 seconds.
Switch back on: press button.

Switching the reading lamps on and off manually
Press button.
Reading lights are located in the front next to the interior light.

Ambient light
Depending on your optional features lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the interior.

Activating/deactivating
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Ambient:"
Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Changing color
- Push the switch forward or back: manual color change.
- Push and hold the switch forward or back: automatic color change. Push the switch again to end color changes.

Setting the brightness
Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Lighting"
3. "Brightness:"
4. Adjust the brightness.
SAFETY

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

AIRBAGS

![Airbag Diagram]

1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Side airbag
4 Knee airbag

Front airbags
Front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate restraint.

Side airbag
In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest, lap, and head area.

Knee airbag
The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.
Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information for optimum effect of the airbags

**WARNING**
If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot protect as intended or cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep at a distance from the airbags.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o’clock and 9 o’clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- There should be no persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, e.g., for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations. The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive individuals. Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

**Functional readiness of the airbag system**

**Information**

**WARNING**
Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

**WARNING**
Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system could not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

The concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body’s resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger’s side are either activated or deactivated.

Information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

⚠️ WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, it must be detected, whether a person occupies the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case,

the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion.

▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.

▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.

▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.

▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the
front passenger side are not activated.

The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

**Detected child seats**
The system generally detects children seated in a child seat, particularly in child seats required by NHTSA when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child seat has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

**Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag**
The explosive power that activates driver's/front passenger's airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger's seat. To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long-term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a relevant Check Control message is displayed. A message also appears on the Control Display.

**Calibrating the front seats**

**WARNING**

There is risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

1. Move the respective seat all the way forward.
2. Move the respective seat forward again. It moves forward briefly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the Check Control message disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

**ROLLOVER PROTECTION SYSTEM**

**The concept**
The rollover protection system is automatically activated in the event of a sufficiently serious accident or if the longitudinal axis is tilted excessively. The safety frames located behind the rear headrests extend within fractions of a second.

Supplementing the reinforced front windshield frame, the rollover protection system further increases passenger safety.

**Information**

**WARNING**

There can be damage or injuries when the rollover protection system is triggered. There is a risk of injuries or a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rollover protection system is clear.

Do not place any objects on the covers of the rollover protection system.
WARNING
Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the system. In the case of a malfunction, the system could not trigger as intended in the event of an accident despite respective accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Triggered rollover protection system

WARNING
After triggering or damage, system functionality is limited or not available anymore. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Have the system checked and replaced by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop in the event of triggering of or damage to the system.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed when there is a malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR
TPM

The concept
The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires. For this purpose, sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure.

Information

With use of the system observe further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 186.

Functional requirements
The system must have been reset with the correct tire inflation pressure; otherwise, reliable signaling of tire pressure loss is not assured. Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics to ensure that the system will operate properly.

Status display

The current status of the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the TPM is active.

On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM)"

The status is displayed.

Status control display

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the tires and a text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green
System is active and will issue a warning relative to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One wheel is yellow
A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire.
All wheels are yellow
A flat tire or major drop in inflation pressure in several tires.

Wheels, gray
The system cannot detect a flat tire due to a malfunction.

Additional information
The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Carry out reset
Reset the system after each adjustment of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

On the Control Display and on the vehicle:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Perform reset"
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Reset the tire inflation pressure using "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.
The tires are shown in gray and the status is displayed.

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The resetting process is completed automatically while driving. After successful completion of the reset, the tires appear in green on the Control Display and "Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) active" is displayed.
The progress of the reset is displayed.
You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Low tire pressure message
The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

▷ There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.
▷ A reset of the system was not carried out after a wheel was changed. The system therefore issues a warning based on the tire pressures before the last reset.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.
   Run-flat tires, refer to page 193, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING
A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

A low tire inflation pressure might turn on DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

Actions in the event of a flat tire
Normal tires
1. Identify the damaged tire.
   Check the air pressure in all four tires, e.g. using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.
   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g. with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

Use of tire sealant, for example, the Mobility System, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

Run-flat tires

Maximum speed
You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

Continued driving with a flat tire
If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is shown to be correct, it is possible that the Tire Pressure Monitor did not perform a reset. Then perform the reset.

Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:
The possible driving distance with a flat tire depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

WARNING
Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Final tire failure
Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Required inflation pressure check message
A Check Control message is displayed in the following situations

▷ The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done.
▷ Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
▷ The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last confirmation.

In this case:

▷ Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
▷ Carry out a reset of the system after a tire change.
System limits

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, e.g., a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire’s temperature. Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire’s temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure. The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again. These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. No flat tire or loss of tire pressure can be detected.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

▷ A wheel without TPM electronics, for example an emergency wheel, is mounted: Have it checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.

▷ Malfunction: Have system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.

▷ Interference through systems or devices with the same radio frequency: After leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver’s responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.
FTM FLAT TIRE MONITOR

The concept
The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires. It detects a tire inflation pressure loss by comparing the rotational speeds of the individual wheels while moving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. This will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

Functional requirements
The system must have been initialized when the tire inflation pressure was correct; otherwise, reliable flagging of a flat tire is not assured. Initialize the system after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.

Status display
The current status of the Flat Tire Monitor can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the FTM is active.

On the Control Display:
1. ![Vehicle info]
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Flat Tire Monitor (FTM)"

The status is displayed.

Initialization
When initializing the once set inflation tire pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

On the Control Display:
1. ![Vehicle info]
2. "Vehicle status"

3. ![Perform reset]
4. Start the engine - do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time. The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Indication of a flat tire
The yellow warning lamp lights up. A Check Control message is displayed.

There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Check whether the vehicle is fitted with normal tires or run-flat tires.

Run-flat tires, refer to page 193, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the tire's sidewall.

WARNING
A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. Run-flat tires can maintain limited stability. There is risk of an accident. Do not continue driving if the vehicle is not equipped with run-flat tires. Follow the information on run-flat tires and continued driving with these tires.

When a flat tire is indicated, DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on if needed.

System limits
A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.

Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- When the system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

**Actions in the event of a flat tire**

**Normal tires**

1. Identify the damaged tire.
   
   Check the air pressure in all four tires, e.g. using the tire pressure gage of a tire repair kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g. with a tire repair kit or by changing the tire.

**Run-flat tires**

**Maximum speed**

You may continue driving with a damaged tire at speeds up to 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Continued driving with a flat tire**

If continuing to drive with a damaged tire:

1. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
3. Check the air pressure in all four tires at the next opportunity.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

**Possible driving distance with complete loss of tire inflation pressure:**

The possible driving distance with a flat tire depends on cargo load, driving style and road conditions.

A vehicle with an average load has a possible driving range of approx. 50 miles/80 km.

A vehicle with a damaged tire reacts differently, e.g., it has reduced lane stability during braking, a longer braking distance and different self-steering properties. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Avoid abrupt steering maneuvers or driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs, potholes, etc.

Because the possible driving distance depends on how the vehicle is used during the trip, the actual distance may be shorter or longer depending on the driving speed, road conditions, external temperature, cargo load, etc.

**WARNING**

Your vehicle handles differently when a run-flat tire is damaged and has low or missing tire inflation pressure, e.g., your lane stability is reduced when braking, braking distances are longer and the self-steering properties will change. There is risk of an accident.

Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

**Final tire failure**

Vibrations or loud noises while driving can indicate the final failure of a tire.

Reduce speed and stop; otherwise, pieces of the tire could come loose and cause an accident.

Do not continue driving. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
INTELLIGENT SAFETY

The concept
Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.
The intelligent safety systems can help prevent an imminent collision.
▷ Front-end collision warning with City Braking function, refer to page 116.
▷ Person warning with City light braking function, refer to page 119.

Information
WARNING
Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Press button briefly:
▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Press button again:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
▷ The LED goes out.
The concept
The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.
The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently if needed.
The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.
The system is controlled via a camera in the base of the mirror.
The front-end collision warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the collision warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information
The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.
Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Information

WARNING
Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.
Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera

The camera is installed near the interior rear‐view mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:

▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.

LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.

▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:

▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.

▷ The LED goes out.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set via the onboard monitor.

1. "Settings"
2. "Frontal Coll. Warning"
3. Activate the desired warning time on the Control Display.

The selected warning time is stored for the profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a recognized vehicle is imminent a warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster and in the Head-Up Display.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚗</td>
<td>Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Prewarning**

This warning is issued, for example, when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

**Acute warning with braking function**

Acute warning in displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

**Braking intervention**

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.

**System limits**

**Information**

⚠️ **WARNING**

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

**Detection range**

The system’s detection potential is limited. Thus a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E.g. the following situations may not be detected:

▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.

▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.

▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.

▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

**Functional limitations**

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.

▷ In tight curves.

▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.

▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.

▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.

▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e.g., from the sun low in the sky.
Warning sensitivity
The more sensitive the warning settings are, the more warnings are displayed. However, there may also be an excess of false warnings.

PERSON WARNING WITH CITY LIGHT BRAKING FUNCTION

The concept
The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.
The system issues a warning in the city driving speed area if there is imminent danger of a collision with pedestrians and includes a braking function.
A camera at the base of the interior mirror controls the system.

General information
With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.
Under those circumstances it reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range

The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Information

⚠️ WARNING
Indicators and warnings do not relieve the driver from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late or incorrectly. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

⚠️ WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.

Overview

Button in the vehicle
Camera

The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.

Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically
The system is automatically active after every driving-off.

Switching on/off manually

Press button briefly:
▷ The menu for the intelligent safety system is displayed. The systems are individually switched off according to their respective settings.
▷ LED lights up orange or goes out respective to their individual settings.

Adjust as needed. Individual settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Press button again:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are activated.
▷ The LED lights up green.

Hold down button:
▷ All Intelligent Safety systems are turned off.
▷ The LED goes out.

Warning with braking function

Display
If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster and in the Head-up Display.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.
Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention
The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Premise for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and sufficiently hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: During a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, e.g. by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions are to be considered.
System limits

Information

⚠️ WARNING

The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E. g. the following situations may not be detected:

▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 inches/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

▷ In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
▷ In tight curves.
▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for example DSC OFF.
▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, e. g., from the sun low in the sky.

► When it is dark outside.

BRAKE FORCE DISPLAY

The concept

▷ During normal brake application, the brake lights light up.
▷ During heavy brake application, the flashers light up in addition.

POST CRASH — IBRAKE

In the event of an accident, the system can bring the car to a halt automatically without intervention by the driver in certain situations. This can reduce the risk of a further collision and the consequences thereof.

Depressing the brake pedal can cause the vehicle to brake harder. This interrupts automatic braking. Destepping on the gas pedal also interrupts automatic braking.

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically. Secure the vehicle against rolling.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle contains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

BRAKE ASSISTANT

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL

The concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information

Dynamic Stability Control detect for example the following unstable driving conditions:

▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Dynamic Traction Control DTC, refer to page 123, is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.

Information

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, not even with DSC.

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has failed.
Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF
When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.
To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC
Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.
DSC is switched off.

Activating DSC
Press button.
DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lights
When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.
The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

Automatic activation
When DSC is deactivated, automatic activation occurs in the following situations:
▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DTC DYNAMIC TRACTION CONTROL
The concept
DTC is a version of the DSC where forward momentum is optimized.
The system ensures maximum headway on special road conditions, for example unplowed snowy roads or loose road surfaces, but with somewhat limited vehicle stability.
When DTC is activated, the vehicle has maximum traction. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.
Therefore drive with appropriate caution.
You may find it useful to briefly activate DTC under the following special circumstances:
▷ When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
▷ When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose grounds.
▷ When driving with snow chains.

Deactivating/activating DTC Dynamic Traction Control
Activating DTC
Press button.
TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster and the indicator lamp for DSC OFF lights up.

Deactivating DTC
Press button again.
TRACTION and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

PERFORMANCE CONTROL
Performance Control enhances the agility of the vehicle.
To increase maneuverability, with a correspondingly sporty driving style, wheels are braked individually.
DYNAMIC DAMPING CONTROL

The concept
The tuning of the suspension can be changed with the system.

Programs
The system offers several different programs.
Select the programs via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 124.

MID/GREEN
Balanced tuning of the shock absorbers for more comfort.

SPORT
Consistently sporty tuning of the shock absorbers for greater driving agility.

DRIVING DYNAMICS CONTROL

The concept
The Driving Dynamics Control helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Choose between three different programs. Driving Dynamics Control will activate the particular program.

Operating the programs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driving Dynamics Control</th>
<th>Program</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GREEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SPORT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MID
For balanced tuning.

With each starting operation, MID is activated using the Start/Stop button.

GREEN
GREEN, refer to page 174, provides consistent tuning to maximize range.

Activating GREEN
Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN

Via the Driving Dynamics Control
1. Activate GREEN.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.
This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

Via onboard monitor:
1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"
   or
1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"
Configure the program.
This configuration is retrieved when GREEN is activated.

SPORT
Consistently sporty tuning of the drivetrain for greater driving agility.

With the appropriate equipment, the tuning of the suspension also changes and SPORT can be individually configured.
The configuration is stored for the profile currently used.
Activating SPORT
Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the left until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring SPORT
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, when the display is activated on the Control Display, the SPORT driving mode can be configured for individual specifications.

Activating SPORT.
Select "Configure SPORT".
Configure the program.
SPORT can also be configured before it is activated:
1. "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure SPORT"
This configuration is retrieved when SPORT is activated.

Configuring driving program
Settings can be made for the following driving programs in Driving mode:
▷ GREEN, refer to page 124.
▷ SPORT, refer to page 124.

Display on the onboard monitor
Program changes can be displayed on the onboard monitor.
1. "Settings"
2. "Control display"
3. "Driving mode info"

DRIVE-OFF ASSISTANT

The concept
This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant
1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.
For vehicles with respective equipment versions, the possible holding duration amounts to 2 minutes.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

CAMERA-BASED CRUISE CONTROL

The concept

Using this system, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

The system maintains the desired speed on clear roads. For this purpose, the vehicles accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of your vehicle within the given system limits so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained.

The distance can be adjusted in several steps. For safety reasons, it depends on the repetitive speed.

General information

A camera on the interior rear view mirror is used to detect vehicles driving ahead.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Active cruise control is paused below approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The system does not brake to a stop. Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Information

WARNING

The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

WARNING

Risk of accident due to too high speed differences to other vehicles, e.g., in the following situations:

▷ When fast approaching a slowly moving vehicle.

▷ Suddenly swerving vehicle onto the own lane.

▷ When fast approaching standing vehicles.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.
Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Cruise control" /></td>
<td>Cruise control on/off, refer to page 127.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Set" /></td>
<td>Store/maintain speed, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Pause cruise control" /></td>
<td>Pause cruise control, refer to page 127. Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Reduce distance" /></td>
<td>Reduce distance, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Increase distance" /></td>
<td>Increase distance, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Increase speed" /></td>
<td>Increase speed, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Reduce speed" /></td>
<td>Reduce speed, refer to page 128.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Buttons are arranged according to vehicle’s series, optional features and country specifications.

Camera

The camera is installed near the interior rearview mirror.
Keep the windshield in the area behind the interior rearview mirror clean and clear.

Functional requirements

Speed range

The system is best used on well-constructed roads.

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

The max. speed that can be set is 85 mph/140 km/h.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up.

Display in the instrument cluster lights up. The current speed is adopted as desired speed and displayed with symbol.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.
DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

Press button on the steering wheel.

Automatic interruption

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When the driver applies the brakes.
If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.

If selector lever position N is set.

When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.

When DSC is actively controlling stability.

If the detection range of the camera is impaired, for example, by soiling, heavy precipitation or glare effects from the sun.

If the vehicle in front decelerates below a speed of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

**Setting the speed**

**Maintaining/storing the speed**

Press \( + \) or \( - \) button in the interrupted state. When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

The stored speed is displayed on the symbol.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

The speed can also be stored as follows:

Press button.

**Changing the speed**

\( + \) or \( - \) button: press until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

\( + \) or \( - \) button: hold down to repeat the corresponding action.

**Adjusting distance**

**Information**

**WARNING**

The system does not release from the personal responsibility. Due to the system limits, braking can be late. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Be aware to the traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

**Reduce distance**

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

**Increase distance**

Press button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

The set distance is briefly displayed in the left part of the instrument cluster.

**Continuing cruise control**

**General information**

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When the ignition is switched off.
Information
Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed and distance
Press button with the system interrupted. Cruise control is continued with the saved values. The selected distance is briefly displayed in the CID (central information display).

Switching distance control on/off

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed
In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

- Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you
Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the CID (central information display).

Switching distance control off

Information
WARNING
The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.⚠

Switching distance control off

Displays in the instrument cluster

Desired speed and stored speed
In addition to the indicator lamp, the desired speed is displayed in the central information display.

- Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
- Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
- No display: system is switched off.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

Distance to vehicle ahead of you
Selected distance from the vehicle driving ahead is briefly displayed in the left hand portion of the CID (central information display).

 Distance display

- Distance 1
- Distance 2
- Distance 3
- Distance 4
This value is set automatically after the system is switched on.

Detected vehicle
Symbol lights up orange:
A vehicle has been detected ahead of you.
Indicator/warning lights

Symbol flashes orange:
The conditions are not adequate for the system to work.
The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Symbol flashes red and a signal sounds:
You are requested to intervene by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

The system has been interrupted or distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was not detected.

Distance control is temporarily suppressed because the accelerator pedal is being pressed; a vehicle was detected.

Displays in the Head-up Display

The information from Active Cruise Control can also be displayed in the Head-up Display.
Adjusting the Head-up Display, refer to page 94.

System limits

Detection range

The detection capacity of the system and the automatic braking capacity are limited.

Two-wheeled vehicles for instance might not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:
▷ For pedestrians, cyclists or similarly slow-moving road users.
▷ For red traffic lights.
▷ For cross traffic.
▷ For oncoming traffic.
▷ Unlit vehicles or vehicles with nonworking lighting at night.

Swerving vehicles

A vehicle driving in front of you is not detected until it is completely within the same lane as your vehicle.

If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly swerves into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. This also applies to major speed differences to vehicles driving ahead of you, for example, when rapidly approaching a truck.

When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and carrying out evasive maneuvers, if needed.
Cornering

If the desired speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly, although curves cannot be anticipated in advance. Therefore, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

In tight curves the system offers only restricted detection where a vehicle ahead of you might be detected late or not at all.

Engine power

The desired speed may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed if the system fails or was automatically deactivated. The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- When an object was not correctly detected.
- In heavy fog, rain, sprayed water or snowfall.
- In tight curves.
- If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- When driving toward bright lights.
- Up to 20 seconds after the start of the engine, via the Start/Stop button.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

CRUISE CONTROL

The concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system is functional at speeds beginning at approx. 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.
Information

WARNING
The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

WARNING
The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations:

▷ On winding roads.
▷ In heavy traffic.
▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow or rain, or on a loose road surface.

There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Press button</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Cruise control on/off" /></td>
<td>Cruise control on/off, refer to page 132.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Store speed" /></td>
<td>Store speed, refer to page 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Pause cruise control" /></td>
<td>Pause cruise control, refer to page 132.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Continue cruise control" /></td>
<td>Continue cruise control with the last setting, refer to page 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Increase speed" /></td>
<td>Increase speed, refer to page 133.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Reduce speed" /></td>
<td>Reduce speed, refer to page 133.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up.

The current speed is adopted as the desired speed and is displayed with the symbol in the instrument cluster.

Cruise control is active and maintains the set speed.

DSC will be switched on if needed.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

Automatic interruption

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
▷ If selector lever position N is set.
▷ When DTC is activated or DSC is deactivated.
▷ When DSC is actively controlling stability.
Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed
Press $+$ or $-$ button in the interrupted state. When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.
The stored speed is displayed in the instrument cluster.
DSC will be switched on if needed.
The speed can also be stored as follows:
Press button.

Changing the speed
$+$ or $-$ button: press until the desired speed is set.
If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.
$+$ or $-$ button: each time it is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
$+$ or $-$ button: each time it is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.
The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
$+$ or $-$ button: pressing it to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal. After the button is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

General information
An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Information
Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

Calling up stored speed
Press button on the steering wheel.
The stored speed is reached and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp
Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed
The desired speed is displayed together with the symbol.
$+$ Display lights up green: system is active, the display indicates the desired speed.
$+$ Display lights up orange: system is interrupted, the display indicates the stored speed.
$+$ No display: system is switched off.
If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.
System limits

Engine power
The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC PARK DISTANCE CONTROL

The concept
PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear - or also in the front of the vehicle if the feature is available - then the object is reported through:

▷ Signal tones.
▷ Visual display.

General information
Ultrasound sensors in the bumpers measure the distances from objects.
The maneuvering range, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given with the following circumstances:

▷ By the front middle sensors and the two corner sensors at approx. 24 inches/60 cm.
▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.
▷ When a collision is imminent.

Information
Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.

⚠️ WARNING
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene in the respective situations. ◄

⚠️ WARNING
Due to high speeds when PDC is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC is not yet active. ◄

Overview

With front PDC: button in vehicle

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for example in the bumpers.

Functional requirements
To ensure full functionality:

▷ Do not cover sensors, for example, with stickers, bicycle racks.
▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.

To clean: when using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 inches/30 cm.
Switching on/off

Switching on automatically
PDC switches on automatically in the following situations:

▷ If selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.
   The rearview camera also switches on.
▷ With front PDC: when obstacles are detected behind or in front of the vehicle by PDC and the speed is slower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h.

With front PDC: You can switch off automatic activation on obstacle detection:

1. ☰ "Settings"
2. "Parking"
3. Select setting.
   Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.
Switch the system back on if needed.

With front PDC: switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The rearview camera image is displayed when the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Display

Signal tones
When approaching an object, an intermittent sound indicates the position of the object. E. g. if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

With front PDC: if objects are located both in front of and behind the vehicle, an alternating continuous signal is sounded.

The signal tone is switched off, when selector lever position P is engaged on vehicles with Steptronic transmission.

Volume
The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

1. ☰ "Multimedia", ☰ "Radio" or ☰ "Settings"
2. "Tone"
3. "Volume settings"
4. "PDC"
5. To adjust: turn the Controller.
6. To store: press the Controller.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Visual warning
The approach of the vehicle to an object can be shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in colors: red, green and yellow.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC: ☰ "Rear view camera"
System limits

Information

WARNING
The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement
Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:
▷ For small children and animals.
▷ For persons with certain clothing, for example coats.
▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, for example from passing vehicles or loud machines.
▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
▷ If cargo protrudes.
▷ Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.
▷ With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
▷ With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
▷ With moving objects.
▷ With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
▷ With objects with corners and sharp edges.
▷ With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
▷ For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, for example, curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings
PDC may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:
▷ In heavy rain.
▷ When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
▷ When sensors are covered in snow.
▷ On rough road surfaces.
▷ On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
▷ In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for example, in underground garages.
▷ In automatic car washes.
▷ Through heavy pollution.
▷ Due to other ultrasound sources, for example, sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

The malfunction is signaled by a continuous tone alternating between the front and rear speakers. As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

With front PDC: to reduce false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for example in car washes, refer to page 135.

Malfunction
A Check Control message, refer to page 81, is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Red symbol is displayed, and the range of the sensors is dimmed on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked.
REARVIEW CAMERA

The concept
The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

Information

WARNING
The system does not relieve from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Camera

The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. Clean the camera lens, refer to page 230.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically
With the engine running, engage lever in position P R.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel
The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.
Switch the system back on if needed.

Switching on/off manually

Press park assistance button.

▷ On: the LED lights up.
▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The PDC is shown on the Control Display.
The rearview camera image is displayed if the reverse gear is engaged when pressing the park assistance button.

Switching the view via the onboard monitor
With PDC activated:
R "Rear view camera"
The rearview camera image is displayed.

**Display on the Control Display**

**Functional requirement**
- The rearview camera is switched on.
- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo or carrier systems and trailers that are not connected to a trailer power socket can lead to malfunctions.

**Activating the assistance functions**
More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.
- Parking aid lines
  - *Parking aid lines*
  - Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- Obstacle marking
  - *Obstacle marking*
  - Spatially-shaped markings are displayed.

**Pathway lines**

Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.
Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.
Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

**Turning circle lines**

Turning circle lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.
Turning circle lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.
Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

**Obstacle marking**

Obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.
Their colored margins of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC.
Parking using pathway and turning radius lines
1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.

System limits

Detection of objects
Very low obstacles or high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be recognized by the system.
Assistance functions also take into account data of the PDC.
Follow instructions in the PDC chapter, refer to page 134.
The objects displayed on the Control Display under certain circumstances are closer than they appear. Therefore, do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Display settings

Brightness
With the rearview camera switched on:
1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

Contrast
With the rearview camera switched on:
1. Select the symbol.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached and press the Controller.

PARKING ASSISTANT

The concept
This system assists the driver in parking parallel to the road.
Parking assistant handling is divided into three steps:
▷ Switching on and activating.
▷ Parking space search.
▷ Parking.
System status and instructions on required actions are displayed on the Control Display.
Ultrasound sensors measure parking spaces on both sides of the vehicle.
The parking assistant calculates the best possible parking line and takes control of steering during the parking procedure.
Information
A component of the parking assistant is the PDC Park Distance Control, refer to page 134. When parking, also take note of the visual and acoustic information issued by the PDC, the parking assistant and, where applicable, the rearview camera, and react accordingly.
Loud noises from outside and inside the vehicle may prevent you from hearing the PDC's signal tone.

WARNING
The system does not release from the personal responsibility to correctly assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is risk of an accident. Adjust the driving style to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

ATTENTION
The parking assistant can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of damage to property. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene in the respective situations.

An engine that has been switched off by the Auto Start Stop function is restarted automatically when the parking assistant is activated.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Ultrasound sensors
The ultrasound sensors for measuring parking spaces are located on the wheel housing.
To ensure full functionality:
▷ Keep the sensors clean and free of ice.
▷ When using high-pressure washers, do not spray the sensors for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 12 inches/30 cm.
▷ Do not put stickers over sensors.

Requirements

For measuring parking spaces
▷ Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
▷ Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space
▷ Gaps behind an object that has a min. length of 5 ft/1.5 m.
▷ Gap between two objects with a minimum length of approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.
▷ Min. length of gap between two objects: your vehicle’s length plus approx. 3.3 ft/1.0 m.
▷ Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Regarding the parking procedure
▷ Doors and tailgate closed.
▷ Parking brake released.
When parking in parking spaces on the driver's side, the corresponding turn signal must be set.

**Switching on and activating**

**Switching on with the button**

Press park assistance button. The LED lights up.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

Parking assistant is activated automatically.

**Switching on with reverse gear**

Shift into reverse.

The current status of the parking space search is indicated on the Control Display.

To activate: "Parking Assistant"

**Indicator on the Control Display**

**System activated/deactivated**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P •</td>
<td>Gray: the system is not available. White: the system is available but not activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P •</td>
<td>The system is activated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parking space search and system status**

Colored symbols, see arrows, on the side of the vehicle illustrated. Parking assistant is activated and search for parking space active.

Control Display shows suitable parking spaces at the edge of the road next to the vehicle symbol. When the parking assistant is active, suitable parking spaces are highlighted.

The parking procedure is active. Steering control has been taken over by system.

Parking space search is always active whenever the vehicle is moving forward slow and straight, even if the system is deactivated. When the system is deactivated, the displays on the Control Display are shown in gray.

**Parking using the parking assistant**

1. Press park assistance button or shift into reverse gear to switch the parking assistant on, refer to page 141. Activate the parking assistant if needed.

2. Pass the row of parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and at a distance of maximum 5 ft/1.5 m. The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the display, refer to page 141.

3. Follow the instructions on the display. The best possible parking position will come after gear change on the stationary vehicle - wait for the automatic steering wheel move. The end of the parking procedure is indicated on the display.

4. Adjust the parking position yourself if needed.
Interrupting manually
The parking assistant can be interrupted at any time:
▷ "Parking Assistant"
▷ Press park assistance button.

Interrupting automatically
The system is interrupted automatically in the following situations:
▷ If the driver grasps the steering wheel or if he takes over steering.
▷ If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the display.
▷ If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
▷ Possible on snow-covered or slippery road surfaces.
▷ If a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
▷ If the Park Distance Control PDC displays clearances that are too small.
▷ When switching into other functions of the radio.
A Check Control message is displayed.

Resume
An interrupted parking procedure can be continued if needed.
Reactivate the parking assistant, refer to page 141, and follow the instructions on the display.

Switching off
The system can be deactivated as follows:
▷ Press park assistance button.
▷ Switching off the ignition.

System limits

Information

WARNING
The system can react incorrectly or not at all due to the system limits. There is risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Observe the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.

No parking assistance
The parking assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:
▷ In tight curves.

Functional limitations
The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:
▷ On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
▷ On slippery ground.
▷ With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
▷ With a mounted emergency wheel.
▷ With ditches or edges, for example an edge of a port.

Limits of ultrasonic measurement
Ultrasonic measuring might not function under the following circumstances:
▷ For small children and animals.
▷ For persons with certain clothing, for example coats.
▷ With external interference of the ultrasound, for example from passing vehicles or loud machines.
▷ When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
▷ If cargo protrudes.
Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, rain, snowfall, extreme heat or strong wind.

With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.

With thin or wedge-shaped objects.

With moving objects.

With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.

With objects with corners and sharp edges.

With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.

For objects with porous surfaces.

Low objects already displayed, for example, curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

The parking assistant may identify parking spaces that are not suitable for parking.

**Tire size**

The parking position may vary depending on the tire size.

**Malfunction**

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking assistant failed. Have the system checked.
CLIMATE CONTROL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

AIR CONDITIONER

1 Vent settings
2 Air flow
3 Temperature
4 Seat heating, right  
5 Cooling function
6 Recirculated-air mode
7 Rear window defroster
8 Windshield defroster
9 Seat heating, left  

Online Edition for Part no. 01 40 2 969 276 - II/16
Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on
Set any air volume.

Switching off
Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature
Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Cooling function
The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again. The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Temperature
Press button.
Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioner produces condensation water, refer to page 168, that will exit from below the car.

Recirculated-air mode
You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Air flow, manual
Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.
The higher the rate, the more effective the heating or cooling will be.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution
Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

▷ Windows.
▷ Upper body region.
▷ Floor area.
▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
Defrosts windows and removes condensation
Direct the air distribution toward windows, increase the air flow and temperature, and, if needed, use the cooling function.

Windshield defroster
Press button.
The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster
Press button.
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode, refer to page 174, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter
In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.
This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 206, of your vehicle.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL
9 Maximum cooling
10 Cooling function
11 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
12 Rear window defroster

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on
Set any air volume.

Switching off
Turn wheel for air quantity to the left until the control switches off.

Temperature
Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. The automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Cooling function
The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

13 Windshield defroster
14 Defrosts windows and removes condensation
15 Seat heating, left 56

A/C Press button.
Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog up briefly when the engine is started.
The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 168, develops that exits underneath the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

MAX A/C Press button.
The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and air circulation mode.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.
The function is available with external temperatures beyond approx. 32 ℉/0 ℃ and with the engine running.
Adjust air flow with the program active.

AUTO program

AUTO Press button.
Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Depending on the selected temperature, AUTO intensity and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.
The cooling function, refer to page 147, and the automatic recirculation control, refer to
page 148, are automatically also switched on in the AUTO program.
To switch off the program: press the button again or manually adjust the air distribution.

Intensity of the AUTO program
With the AUTO program activated, the automatic intensity control can be changed.

Turn the ring to set the desired intensity from soft to intensive.

The set intensity is displayed via the position of the illuminated LED segment.

Convertible program
When the convertible top is open, the convertible program is activated as well. In the convertible program, the automatic climate control is optimized for driving with the convertible top open. In addition, the air flow is increased as the vehicle speed increases.

The efficiency of the convertible program can be greatly enhanced by installing the wind deflector.

Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
You may respond to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle.

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.

Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window condensation, recirculated air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the external temperature.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculating mode and press the AUTO button.

Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Air flow, manual
To manually adjust air flow turn off AUTO program first.

Turn the ring to set the desired air volume.

The manually adjusted air flow is displayed via illuminated LED segments.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Manual air distribution

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- Upper body region.
- Upper body region and floor area.
- Floor area.
- Windows and floor area.
- Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- Windows and upper body region.
- Windows.
Defrosts windows and removes condensation
Press button.
Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Adjust air flow with the program active.
If the windows fog over, also switch on the cooling function or press the AUTO button.

Windshield defroster
Press button.
The front window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Rear window defroster
Press button.
The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

When GREEN Mode, refer to page 174, is activated, the heater output is reduced.

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter
In external and recirculated air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.
This filter should be replaced during scheduled maintenance, refer to page 206, of your vehicle.

VENTILATION
Setting
The air flow directions can be individually adjusted:

- Direct ventilation:
The air flow is directly pointed onto the person. The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the adjusted temperature.

- Indirect ventilation:
If the vents are fully or partly closed, the air is directly routed into the car's interior.

Front ventilation

- Turn knob for continuous opening and closing of the vents.
- Swivel the vents to alter the direction of the vent flow, arrow.

PARKED-CAR VENTILATION

The concept
The parked-car ventilation ventilates the vehicle interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.
The system can be switched on and off at any external temperature, either directly or by using two preset activation times. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.
Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate comf. ventilation"
The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.
Preselecting the switch-on time
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Timer 1:" or "Timer 2:"
4. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time
On the Control Display:
1. "Settings"
2. "Climate"
3. "Activate timer 1" or "Activate timer 2"

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the switch-on time is activated.
The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.
The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.
INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

UNIVERSAL INTEGRATED REMOTE CONTROL

The concept

The Universal Integrated Remote Control can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems such as garage door drives or lighting systems. The Universal Integrated Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior rearview mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Information

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the instructions of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the Universal Integrated Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:
▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Overview

1 LED
2 Programmable keys
3 Hand-held transmitters of the system

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:
   Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously
for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior rearview mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior rearview mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.

4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior rearview mirror. The LED on the interior rearview mirror will begin flashing slowly.

5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior rearview mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior rearview mirror buttons.

Special feature of the alternating-code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features an alternating-code radio system. Read the system’s operating manual, or press the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features an alternating-code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with an alternating-code radio system, the universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized. Please read the operating manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the relevant button on the interior rearview mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior rearview mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior rearview mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior rearview mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior rearview mirror. The required distance depends on the manual transmitter.
4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.

5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior rearview mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior rearview mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior rearview mirror.

If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior rearview mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

### Controls

**WARNING**

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, e.g., the garage door, using the integrated universal remote control. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter. ▶

The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior rearview mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior rearview mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

#### Deleting stored functions

Press and hold the left and right button on the interior rearview mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED flashes rapidly. All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually.

### DIGITAL COMPASS

**Overview**

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

**Operating concept**

Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

- Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

**Setting the compass zones**

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.
Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.

2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- The wrong compass point is displayed.
- The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.

2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.

3. Make sure that the convertible top is completely closed.

4. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

5. Open convertible top completely.

6. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.
Left/right-hand steering
The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language
Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".
Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

SUN VISOR

Glare shield
Fold the sun visor down or up.

Vanity mirror
A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

ASHTRAY/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

Overview
The ashtray is located in one of the frontal cup holders, the cigarette lighter above it in the center console.

Ashtray
In order to empty the ashtray, remove the ashtray from the cupholder.

Lighter

WARNING
Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter on its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and do not burn themselves, e.g., by carrying the remote control along when exiting the vehicle.

ATTENTION
If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Push in the lighter.
The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

CONNECTING ELECTRICAL DEVICES

Information

WARNING
Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, for example portable navigation devices, etc., can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior when unfolding. There is a risk of injuries. make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.
ATTENTION
Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

ATTENTION
If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of damage to property. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Sockets
Sockets can be used for the running electrical devices with the engine running or with the ignition switched on. The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.
Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

In the center console
Remove the cover or cigarette lighter.

In the cargo area
The socket is located on the right side in the cargo area.

USB INTERFACE/AUX-IN PORT

The concept
Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.
A mobile audio device, e.g. a MP3 player, can be connected using the AUX-IN port.

General information
The following devices can be connected:
▷ Mobile phones supported by the USB interface.
▷ Audio devices with USB port, for example MP3 player.
▷ USB storage devices.
Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.
Information about compatible USB devices can be found at www.miniusa.com/bluetooth.

The following applications are possible:
▷ Exporting and importing profiles, refer to page 36.
▷ Playing music files via USB audio.
▷ Adding music files to the music collection and saving the music collection.
▷ Playing video films via USB video.
▷ Loading of software updates.
Overview

The USB interface is located in the front of the center console.

Information

Observe the following when connecting:

▷ Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
▷ Use a flexible adapter cable.
▷ Protect the USB device against mechanical damage.
▷ Due to the large number of USB devices available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
▷ Do not expose USB devices to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
▷ Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
▷ A connected USB device is supplied with charging current via the USB interface, assuming this is supported by the device.
▷ To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge an USB device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
▷ Depending on how the USB device should be used, settings may be required on the USB device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Non-suitable USB devices:

▷ USB hard drives.
▷ USB hubs.
▷ USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.
▷ HFS-formatted USB devices.
▷ MTP devices.
▷ Devices such as fans or lights.

LOADING

Information

WARNING
When opening and closing the loading aid, body parts can be jammed, for example by the mechanism. There is a risk of injuries. Make sure that the area of movement of the loading aid is clear during operation.

WARNING
With a lifted loading aid, vehicle parts can protrude and limit the view. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. Before driving off, make sure that the loading aid is completely lowered and the tailgate is closed.

The concept

For easier loading, the vehicle is equipped with a trunk partition and a Loading aid, refer to page 157. With the loading aid, the closed convertible top can be lifted out of the cargo area.

Loading aid

With the convertible top closed, loading can be simplified by unlocking and folding the convertible top upward. In this way, objects can be
stowed, which do not fit through the loading opening in the normal position.

1. Unlock the convertible top using the handles, arrows 1.

2. Lift convertible top, arrow 2.

3. Fold back the handles and place on the brackets, arrows 3.

Lower the convertible top again and lock it before continuing on your trip.

1. Remove handles from the brackets.

2. Push convertible top down and hold.

3. Push the handles outward to lock the convertible top.

4. Check that the convertible top is locked.

Expanding the cargo area volume

With the convertible top closed, the cargo area volume can be expanded.

1. Fold the convertible top upward as described under Loading aid, refer to page 157.

2. Swivel the cargo cover upward and remove backward from the lower supports, see arrows 1.

3. Insert the cargo cover into the upper supports, arrows 2, until it engages and place down horizontally.

The loading aid cannot be locked, if the cargo cover is not fully inserted into the upper supports.

4. Fold the convertible top downward as described under Loading aid, refer to page 157, and lock it.

Return the cargo cover into the lower position so that the convertible top can be used.

CARGO AREA

Enlarging the cargo area

The concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts at a ratio of 50 to 50.

The sides can be folded down separately or together.

Information

⚠️ WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injuries or a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.

⚠️ WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible,
adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them. 

**WARNING**
With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.

**WARNING**
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

**Folding down rear seat backrests**
The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area.

1. Before the backrest is folded down, remove the respective safety belt from the rear belt guide, refer to page 57.
2. Pull the lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.
3. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

**Folding back the backrest**

**WARNING**
With an unlocked backrest, an unsecured load can be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the backrest engages into the locking after folding it back.

1. Fold up the backrest and press it into the latch. Make sure that the safety belt is not pinched.
2. Close the belt guide loop of the rear belt guide, refer to page 57.
STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

ATTENTION

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

OVERVIEW

The following storage compartments are available in the vehicle interior:
▷ Storage compartment in front of the cupholders.
▷ Storage tray in the center console.
▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side.
▷ Storage compartment in the center armrest.
▷ Compartments in the doors.
▷ Pockets on the backrests of the front seats.
▷ Storage compartments in the trunk

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

Information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening

Pull the handle.
The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Closing

Fold up the cover.
Locking
The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the trunk lid, refer to page 41, e.g.
This prevents access to the glove compartment and to the trunk.
After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key.

COMPARTMENTS IN THE DOORS

⚠️ WARNING
Breakable objects, e.g., glass bottles, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the vehicle's interior. There is a risk of injury. Do not stow any breakable objects in the vehicle's interior.

CENTER ARMREST
The center armrest contains a storage compartment.

Opening
Press button, arrow 1, and open center arm rest upward, arrow 2.

Adjusting the height
Press button, arrow 1, and swing center arm rest upward or downward into the desired height, arrow 2.

CUP HOLDERS

Information
⚠️ WARNING
Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.

Front
In the center console.
Rear

In front of the rear seats.

STORAGE SPACE UNDER CARGO FLOOR PANEL

Located under the cargo floor panel on the right side is a trough for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

To remove the onboard vehicle tool kit, fold the right side of the cargo floor panel upward.
DRIVE ME.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

BREAKING-IN PERIOD

General information

Moving parts need time to adjust to one another (break-in time).

The following instructions will help accomplish a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control, refer to page 78.

Information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Do not exceed the maximum engine and road speed:

▷ For gasoline engine 4,500 rpm and 100 mph/160 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km

The engine and vehicle speed can gradually be increased.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimal performance between brake discs and brake pads. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle’s operating life.
GENERAL DRIVING NOTES

Closing the tailgate

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

▷ If the convertible top is closed, close all windows and the sliding sun roof.
▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. If possible, in the vehicle’s interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual disturbance and deflect the radiation from the vehicle’s interior.

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

ATTENTION

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of damage to property. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

When driving through water, observe the following:

▷ Drive through calm water only.
▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 inches/25 cm.
▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Braking safely

Your vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such. Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.
Pulsation of the brake pedal and sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that ABS is in its active mode.

**Objects in the area around the pedals**

**WARNING**

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.

**Driving in wet conditions**

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, press brake pedal ever so gently every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated in this process helps dry the brake discs and pads.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

**Hills**

**WARNING**

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

**WARNING**

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions are restricted or not available anymore, e.g., braking effect of the engine or braking force and steering support. There is risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking efforts. Otherwise the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

**Brake disc corrosion**

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are furthered by:

- Low mileage.
- Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.

Corrosion will built up when the maximum pressure applied to the brake pads during braking is not reached - thus discs don't get cleaned.

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally that cannot be corrected.

**Condensation under the parked vehicle**

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops collecting underneath the vehicle.

**Ground clearance**

**CAUTION**

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler for example when driving over curbs or entering into underground car parking garages. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.
DRIVING ON RACETRACKS

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for motorsports competitive use.
LOADING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INFORMATION

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them, and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. There is risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight. ◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior. ◀

ATTENTION

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area. ◀

DETERMINING THE LOAD LIMIT

1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle’s placard:
   ▶ The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or YYY lbs. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and unstable driving situations may result.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or YYY pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

   For example, if the YYY amount equals 1,000 lbs and there will be four 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 400 lbs: 1,000 lbs minus 600 lbs = 400 lbs.

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
LOAD

The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo. The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

STOWING CARGO

- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.

SECUURING CARGO

Information

WARNING
Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the vehicle’s interior, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

- Small and light cargo: secure with ratchet straps or draw straps.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Attach the cargo straps, ratchet straps or draw straps to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

To secure the cargo there are two lashing eyes in the cargo area.

STORING CARGO

The open tailgate can be loaded with a maximum weight of 80 kg/176 lbs.

REAR LUGGAGE RACK

General information
Installation only possible with rear luggage rack preparation.
Rear racks are available as special accessories.

**Information**
Follow the installation instructions of the rear luggage rack.

Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

**Securing**

**COOPER**

![COOPER anchorage points and socket](image)

The anchorage points, arrow 1, and the socket, arrow 2, are located below the covers in the bumper.

Remove the covers before installing the rear luggage rack.

**Power consumption**
Before starting to drive, check the function of the rear luggage rack lights.

The rear luggage rack lights must not consume more than:

- Turn signals: 42 watts per side.
- Rear lights: 50 watts per side.
- Brake lights: 84 watts in total.
- Rear fog lights: 42 watts in total.
- Backup lamp: 42 watts in total.
SAVING FUEL

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

GENERAL INFORMATION
Your vehicle contains advanced technology for the reduction of fuel consumption and emissions.
Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.
The implementation of certain measures, driving style and regular maintenance can influence fuel consumption and environmental impact.

REMOVE UNNECESSARY CARGO
Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

REMOVE ATTACHED PARTS FOLLOWING USE
Remove rear luggage racks which are no longer required following use.
Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

CLOSING THE WINDOWS
Open windows increase air resistance and therefore lead to greater fuel consumption.

TIRES
General information
Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, e.g., tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly
Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.
Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

DRIVE AWAY WITHOUT DELAY
Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.
This is the fastest way for the cold engine to reach its operating temperature.

LOOK WELL AHEAD WHEN DRIVING
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.
Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

**AVOID HIGH ENGINE SPEEDS**
As a rule: driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

Use 1st gear to get the vehicle moving. Starting with the 2nd gear, accelerate rapidly. When accelerating, shift up before reaching high engine speeds.

When you reach the desired speed, shift into the highest applicable gear and drive with the engine speed as low as possible and at a constant speed.

The gear shift indicator, refer to page 87, of your vehicle indicates the most fuel efficient gear.

**USE COASTING CONDITIONS**
When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

**SWITCH OFF THE ENGINE DURING LONGER STOPS**
Switch off the engine during longer stops, for example, at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

**Auto Start/Stop function**
The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running con-stantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

**SWITCH OFF ANY FUNCTIONS THAT ARE NOT CURRENTLY NEEDED**
Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and consume additional fuel, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Therefore, switch off these functions if they are not actually needed.

**HAVE MAINTENANCE CARRIED OUT**
Have vehicles maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. MINI recommends that maintenance work be performed by a MINI service center.

Also note the MINI maintenance systems, refer to page 206.

**GREEN MODE**

**The concept**
The GREEN Mode supports a driving style that saves on fuel consumption. For this purpose, the engine control and comfort features, e. g. the climate control output, are adjusted.

For Steptronic transmission:
The Coasting driving condition is enabled under certain conditions.
Under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission in selector lever position D. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged. An indicator provides information about the distance traveled in Coasting mode.

In addition, context-sensitive instructions are displayed to assist with an optimized fuel consumption driving style.

The achieved extended range is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Overview

The system includes the following MINIMAL functions and displays:

▷ GREEN bonus range, refer to page 176.
▷ GREEN tips driving instruction, refer to page 176.
▷ GREEN climate control, refer to page 175.
▷ MINIMALISM analyzer, refer to page 178.
▷ Coasting driving condition, refer to page 177.

Activating GREEN Mode

Turn Driving Dynamics Control to the right until GREEN Mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Configuring GREEN Mode

Via the Driving Dynamics Control
1. Activating GREEN Mode.
2. "Configure GREEN"
3. Configure the program.

Via onboard monitor:
1. 🛠 "Settings"
2. "GREEN Mode"

Or
1. 🛠 "Settings"
2. "Driving mode"
3. "Configure GREEN"

Configure the program.

GREEN tip
▷ "Tip at:"
   Set the GREEN Mode speed at which a GREEN Mode tip is to be displayed.
▷ "GREEN speed warning":
   Displays a reminder when the set GREEN Mode speed is exceeded.

Coasting

Fuel-efficiency can be optimized by disengaging the engine and Coasting, refer to page 177, with the engine idling.

This function is only available in GREEN Mode.

GREEN climate control

"GREEN climate control"

Climate control is set to be fuel-efficient.

By making a slight change to the set temperature, or adjusting the rate of heating or cooling of the car’s interior fuel consumption can be economized.

The outputs of the seat heater and the exterior Additionally heat output to seats and exterior mirror is reduced.

Exterior mirror heat is available when outside temperatures are very low.

GREEN potential

The percentage of potential savings that can be achieved with the current configuration is displayed.
Display in the instrument cluster

GREEN bonus range

An adjusted driving style helps you extend your driving range. This may be displayed as the bonus range in the instrument cluster.

The bonus range is shown in the range display. The bonus range is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

▷ Green display: efficient driving style.
▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e.g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

Driving style

A bar display in the instrument cluster indicates your current driving efficiency.

Mark in the left area, arrow 1: display for energy recovered by coasting or when braking.

Mark in the right area, arrow 2: display when accelerating.

Your driving style’s efficiency is shown by the bar’s color:

▷ Green display: efficient driving style as long as the mark moves within the green range.
▷ Gray display: adjust driving style, e.g. by backing off the accelerator pedal.

The display switches to green as soon as all conditions for fuel-efficiency-optimized driving are met.

GREEN tip driving instruction

Instructions tell you to switch to a more fuel-efficient driving style when you back off the accelerator.

Information

The driving style display and GREEN Mode tips in the instrument cluster appear when the GREEN Mode display is activated.

Activating driving style and GREEN Mode tips:

1. "Settings"
2. "Instrument cluster"
3. "GREEN Info"

GREEN tip symbols

An additional symbol and text instructions are displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>🍃</td>
<td>For efficient driving back off the accelerator or delay accelerating to allow time to assess road conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✈️</td>
<td>Reduce speed to the selected GREEN speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔥</td>
<td>Steptronic transmission: switch from M/S to D or avoid manual shift interventions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Indications on the Control Display

MINIMALISM

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"

Displaying MINIMALISM info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

"MINIMALISM info"

The following systems are displayed:

▸ Auto Start/Stop function.
▸ Energy recovery.
▸ Climate control output.
▸ Coasting.

Displaying GREEN Mode tips

"GREEN tips"

Driving instruction and an additional symbol are displayed.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Coasting

The concept

The system helps to conserve fuel.

To do this, under certain conditions the engine is automatically decoupled from the transmission when selector lever position D is set. The vehicle continues traveling with the engine idling to reduce fuel consumption. Selector lever position D remains engaged.

This driving condition is referred to as coasting. As soon as the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed, the engine is automatically coupled to the transmission again.

Information

Coasting is a component of the GREEN driving mode, refer to page 174.

Coasting is automatically activated when GREEN Mode is called via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 124.

The function is available in a certain speed range.

A proactive driving style helps the driver to use the function as often as possible and supports the fuel-conserving effect of coasting.

Safety mode

The function is not available under one of the following conditions.

▸ DSC OFF or TRACTION activated.
▸ Driving in the dynamic limit range and on steep uphill or downhill grades.
▸ Battery charge status temporarily too low or vehicle electrical system drawing excessive current.
▸ Cruise control activated.

Functional requirements

In GREEN Mode, this function is available in a speed range from approximately 30 mph, approx. 50 km/h to 100 mph, approx. 160 km/h, if the following conditions are met:

▸ Accelerator pedal and brake pedal are not operated.
▸ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
▸ Engine and transmission are at operating temperature.
Display

Display in the instrument cluster
The mark in the bar display below the tachometer is highlighted green and appears at the zero point. The tachometer approximately indicates idle speed.

Indications on the Control Display
The Coasting driving condition is displayed in MINIMALISM Info while this driving mode is active.
The distance traveled in the Coasting driving condition is indicated by a counter.

Color code green, arrow 1: distance traveled in the Coasting driving condition. Symbol, arrow 2: coasting driving condition.

Displaying MINIMALISM info
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. "MINIMALISM info"

Deactivating the system manually
The function can be deactivated in the Configure GREEN Mode, refer to page 175, menu, for example, to use the braking effect of the engine when traveling downhill.
Settings are saved for the profile currently being used.

MINIMALISM driving style analysis

The concept
In this situation the system helps develop an especially efficient driving style and to conserve fuel.
For this purpose, the driving style is analyzed. The assessment is done in various categories and is displayed on the Control Display.
Using this indication, the individual driving style can be oriented toward conserving fuel.
The last fifteen minutes of a trip are evaluated.
The range of the vehicle can be extended by an efficient driving style. This gain in range is displayed as a bonus range in the instrument cluster and on the Control Display.

Functional requirement
The function is only available in GREEN Mode.

Calling up MINIMALISM Analyser
Via the Driving Dynamics Control
1. Activate GREEN Mode.
2. "MINIMALISM"
3. Select the symbol.

Display

Display on the Control Display
The display of the MINIMALISM Analyser consists of a fish, which is riding along in a glass of water on the roof of the MINI and a table of values that rates the driving style in various cat-
egories. The bonus range achieved by driving style that minimizes fuel consumption is displayed below the table of values.

The fish and the movements of the water in the glass symbolize the efficiency of the driving style. The more efficient the driving style, the less the water sloshes around in the glass and the better is the fish’s mood, arrow 1.

The table of values contains stars, arrow 2. The more efficient the driving style, the more stars are included in the table and the faster the bonus range increases, arrow 3.

If by contrast the driving style is inefficient, the water oscillates, the mood of the fish is sullied and a reduced number of asterisks is displayed.

To assist with an efficient driving style, GREEN tips are displayed during driving.

Tips about the energy saving driving style, Conserving fuel, refer to page 173.
REFUELING

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INFORMATION

Observe the fuel recommendation, refer to page 184, prior to refueling.

ATTENTION

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of damage to property. Refuel promptly.

FUEL LID

Opening

1. Grasp the fuel filler flap at the rear edge and open it.

2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.

3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.

Closing

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

2. Close the fuel filler flap.

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap may be jammed and crushed during closing. In this case, the lid cannot be correctly closed and fuel vapors or fuel can escape. There is a risk of injury or a risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.
OBSERVE THE FOLLOWING WHEN REFUELING

ATTENTION

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. On contact with Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid overfilling.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter helps make a cold start easier, for example.

Information

ATTENTION
Even fuels that conform to the specifications can be of low quality. This may cause engine problems, e.g., poor engine start-up behavior, poor handling and/or poor performance. There is a risk of damage to property. In case of engine problems, switch gas stations or use a brand name fuel with a higher octane rating.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.
Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 25 %, i.e. E10 or E25, may be used for refueling.
Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:
US: ASTM 4806–xx
CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx
xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Information

ATTENTION
Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:
▷ Leaded gasoline.
▷ Metallic additives, e.g., manganese or iron.
Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

ATTENTION
Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use a fuel with a higher ethanol percentage than recommended or one with other types of alcohol, e.g., M5 to M100.

ATTENTION
Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.
If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high outside temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

**CAUTION**

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.

**Recommended fuel grade**

MINI recommends AKI 91.
John Cooper Works:
MINI recommends AKI 93.

**Minimum fuel grade**

MINI recommends AKI 89.
John Cooper Works:
MINI recommends AKI 91.
WHEELS AND TIRES

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE

Safety information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

▷ The service life of the tires.
▷ Road safety.
▷ Driving comfort.

Checking the tire inflation pressure

WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g., twice a month and before a long trip.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Tires heat up while driving, and the tire inflation pressure increases along with the tire’s temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications relate to cold tires or tires with the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after driving no more than 1.25 miles/2 km or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar.

For Flat Tire Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.

For Tire Pressure Monitor: after correcting the tire inflation pressure, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 187, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 187, and adjust as necessary.
These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H M +S A/S Std</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H M +S Std</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H Std</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.5 / 36</td>
<td>2.3 / 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency wheel T 115/70 R 15 90 M</td>
<td>Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h</td>
<td>4.2 / 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### COOPER S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.4 / 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
<td>2.4 / 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td>2.7 / 39</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### JOHN COOPER WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 /42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

**WARNING**

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.
## Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

### COOPER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
<th>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H M</td>
<td>2.8 / 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S A/S Std</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S Std</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/65 R 15 84 H Std</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Emergency wheel**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T 115/70 R 15 90 M</th>
<th>Speed up to a max. of 50 mph / 80 km/h</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.2 / 60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### COOPER S

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 H M +S RSC</td>
<td>2.8 / 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 V M +S A/S RSC</td>
<td>2.6 / 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>195/55 R 16 87 W RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>175/60 R 16 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>3.1 / 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M +S XL RSC</td>
<td>2.9 / 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On 3-door models: JOHN COOPER WORKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tire size</th>
<th>Pressure specifications in bar/PSI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>185/50 R 17 86 H M+S XL RSC</td>
<td>3.2 / 46 3.0 / 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL A/S RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/45 R 17 88 V M +S XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>205/40 R 18 86 W XL RSC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TIRE IDENTIFICATION MARKS**

**Tire size**

205/45 R 17 84 V
205: nominal width in mm
45: aspect ratio in %
R: radial tire code
17: rim diameter in inches
84: load rating, not for ZR tires
F: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

**Speed letter**

T = up to 118 mph, 190 km/h
H = up to 131 mph, 210 km/h
V = up to 150 mph, 240 km/h
W = up to 167 mph, 270 km/h
Y = up to 186 mph, 300 km/h

**Tire Identification Number**

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 0116
xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand
xxx: tire size and tire design
0116: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

**Tire age**

DOT ... 0116: the tire was manufactured in the 1st week of 2016.

**Recommendation**

Regardless of wear and tear, replace tires at least every 6 years.

**Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

**DOT Quality Grades**

Treadwear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

**Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service
practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

**Traction**
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

**Temperature**
The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING**
The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

**RSC – Run-flat tires**
Run-flat tires, refer to page 193, are labeled with a circular symbol containing the letters RSC marked on the sidewall.

**M+S**
Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

**TIRE TREAD**

**Summer tires**
Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.12 in/3 mm.
There is an increased danger of hydroplaning if the tread depth is less than 0.12 in/3 mm.

**Winter tires**
Do not drive with a tire tread depth of less than 0.16 inches/4 mm.
Below a tread depth of 0.16 inches/4 mm, tires are less suitable for winter operation.

**Minimum tread depth**
Wear indicators are distributed around the tire’s circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.
They are marked on the side of the tire with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

**TIRE DAMAGE**

**General information**
Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.
Information

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

▷ Unusual vibrations while driving.
▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can, e.g., be caused by driving over curbs, road damage, or similar things.

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

CHANGING WHEELS AND TIRES

Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

You can ask the dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the right wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel and tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, e.g., due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. These can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new;
they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires
The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

WARNING
Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Winter tires
Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires
If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then a respective symbol is displayed in your field of vision. The label is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With mounted winter tires, observe and adhere to the permissible maximum speed.

Run-flat tires
If you are already using run-flat tires, for your own safety you should replace them only with the same kind. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rotating wheels between axles
Different wear patterns can occur on the front and rear axles depending on individual driving conditions. The tires can be rotated between the axles to achieve even wear. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. After rotating, check the tire pressure and correct if needed.

Storage
Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible.
Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels.
Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

RUN-FLAT TIRES

Label
RSC label on the tire sidewall.
The wheels are composed of tires that are self-supporting to a limited degree.
The support of the sidewall allows the tire to remain drivable to a restricted degree in the event of a tire inflation pressure loss.

Follow the instructions for continued driving with a flat tire.
Changing run-flat tires
For your own safety, only use run-flat tires. No spare tire is available in the case of a flat tire. A dealer’s service center will be glad to answer additional questions at any time.

REPAIRING A FLAT TIRE

Safety measures
▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

MOBILITY SYSTEM

The concept
With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Information
▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 in/4 mm or more.
▷ Contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire.
▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked at the next opportunity and have them replaced if needed.

DANGER
If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless but highly toxic gas. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

Storage
The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

Sealant container
▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.
Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor

1. Sealant container unlocking
2. Holder for sealant container
3. Inflation pressure dial
4. Reduce inflation pressure
5. On/off switch
6. Compressor
7. Connector/cable for socket
8. Connection hose

Filling the tire with sealant

1. Shake the sealant container.
2. Pull filling hose completely out of the cover of the sealant bottle. Do not kink the hose.
3. Slide the sealant container into the holder on the compressor housing, ensuring that it engages audibly.
4. Screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the nonworking wheel.
5. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.

6. With operating readiness switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar. While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

**ATTENTION**
The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:
1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Unscrew the filling hose from the wheel.

3. Drive forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
4. Inflate the tire again using the compressor. If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Stowing the Mobility System**
1. Remove the connection hose of the sealant container from the wheel.
2. After pressing the red unlock button on the compressor, remove the sealing container.
3. Wrap the empty sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the trunk.
4. Stow the Mobility System back in the vehicle.

**Distributing the sealant**
Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.
If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

**To correct the tire inflation pressure**
1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
3. Insert the connector into a power socket inside the vehicle.

4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to at least 2.0 bar.
   - Increase pressure: with the ignition turned on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.
   - To reduce the pressure: press the button on the compressor.

Use

**WARNING**
With the mounting of snow chains on unsuitable tires, the snow chains can come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accidents or a risk of property damage. Only mount snow chains on tires that are designated by their manufacturer as suitable for the use of snow chains.

Use only in pairs on the front wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:
- 175/65 R 15.
- 175/60 R 16.
John Cooper Works:
- 185/50 R 17.
Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not initialize the Tire Pressure Monitor after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, briefly activate Dynamic Traction Control if needed.

**Maximum speed with snow chains**
Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

**SNOW CHAINS**

**Fine-link snow chains**
The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Continuing the trip**
Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 113.
Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 109.
Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System as soon as possible.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

IMPORTANT FEATURES IN THE ENGINE COMP.

1. Washer fluid reservoir
2. Vehicle identification number
3. Oil filler neck
4. Jump-starting, positive terminal
5. Jump-starting, negative terminal
6. Coolant reservoir

HOOD

Information

WARNING
Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
WARNING
The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, e.g., the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

WARNING
There are protruding parts, e.g., locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep these areas clear.

WARNING
An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

WARNING
Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.

ATTENTION
Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Opening the hood
1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

Hood is unlocked.

2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.
Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights
When the hood is opened, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood
Let the hood fall from approx. 16 inches/40 cm, arrow.
The hood must engage on both sides.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

GENERAL INFORMATION

The engine oil consumption is dependent on the driving style and driving conditions.
The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:
▷ Sporty driving style.
▷ Break-in of the engine.
▷ Idling of the engine.
▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.
Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling.
The vehicle is equipped with electronic oil measurement.
The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:
▷ Status display.
▷ Detailed measurement.

ELECTRONIC OIL MEASUREMENT

Status display

The concept
The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and shown on the Control Display.
If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

Requirements
A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of driving. During a shorter trip, the status of the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.
With frequent short-distance trips, perform a detailed measurement.

Displaying the engine oil level
On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

Engine oil level display messages
Different messages appear on the display depending on the engine oil level. Pay attention to these messages.
If the engine oil level is too low within the next 125 miles/200 km, add engine oil, refer to page 201.

ATTENTION
Too low of an engine oil level causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Immediately add engine oil.
Take care not to add too much engine oil.
ATTENTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Detailed measurement

The concept

In the detailed measurement the engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary, and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level reaches the minimum level, a check control message is displayed.

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Requirements

▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
▷ Steptronic transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.
▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

On the Control Display:
1. "Vehicle info"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Measure engine oil level"
4. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Time: approx. 1 minute.

ADDING ENGINE OIL

Information

WARNING

Operating materials, e.g., oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

ATTENTION

Too low of an engine oil level causes engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property.

Add engine oil within the next 125 miles/200 km.

ATTENTION

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Switch off the ignition and safely park the vehicle before engine oil is added.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 198.

Opening the oil filler neck

1. Open the hood, refer to page 198.
2. Turn the oil filler neck counter-clockwise, arrow.

3. Add engine oil.
   After refilling, perform a detailed measurement, refer to page 201.

ENGINE OIL TYPES TO ADD

Information

ATENTION
Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use oil additives.

ATENTION
Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of damage to property. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct viscosity grade.

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Viscosity grades
Gasoline engine:
When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the viscosity grade SAE 0W-20. Alternatively, also engine oils with viscosity grades SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-20, SAE 5W-30, SAE 0W-40 or SAE 5W-40 can be used.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable engine oil types
Add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMW Longlife-01 FE.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types
If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gasoline engine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMW Longlife-01.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>API SL or superior oil rating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ENGINE OIL CHANGE

ATENTION
Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.
MINI recommends
MINI Original Engine Oil.
COOLANT

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INFORMATION

WARNING
With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◀

WARNING
Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◀

Coolant consists of water and additives. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

COOLANT LEVEL

Overview
Open the hood, refer to page 198.
The coolant reservoir is in the engine compartment, refer to page 198.

Checking
There are yellow Min and Max marks in the coolant reservoir.

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.
Adding
1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

DISPOSAL
Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.
MAINTENANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

MINI MAINTENANCE SYSTEM

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

CONDITION BASED SERVICE CBS

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. Based on this, Condition Based Service recognizes the maintenance requirements.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

Information on service requirements, refer to page 86, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer’s service center can read this data out and suggest an optimized maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

SERVICE AND WARRANTY INFORMATION BOOKLET FOR US MODELS AND WARRANTY AND SERVICE GUIDE BOOKLET FOR CANADIAN MODELS

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified
service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

**SOCKET FOR OBD ONBOARD DIAGNOSIS**

**Information**

⚠️ ATTENTION

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle’s primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.

**Position**

There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

**Emissions**

- The warning lamp lights up:
  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:
  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.
  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.
REPLACING COMPONENTS

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

ONBOARD VEHICLE TOOL KIT

The onboard vehicle tool kit is located in the trough under the trunk floor.

WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT

Information

ATTENTION
If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up, refer to page 74, the wiper arms.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Open the wiper blade lock, arrow.
4. Pull the wiper blade down first out of the holder on the wiper arm, arrow 1. Then pull the wiper blade free from the holder of the wiper arm, arrow 2.
5. Insert and latch a new wiper blade in reverse order.
6. Fold down the wipers.
LAMP AND BULB REPLACEMENT

General information
Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you have appropriate work performed by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if you are unfamiliar with it or if it has not been described here.

A spare lamp box is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Information

Lights and bulbs

⚠️ WARNING
Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injuries. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.

⚠️ WARNING
Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injuries or a risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer’s instructions.

⚠️ CAUTION
Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)
Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source.

These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

⚠️ WARNING
Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass
Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the lights switched on, increasing humidity forms, e. g. water droplets in the lamp, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends having it checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Front lights, bulb replacement

Overview

Halogen headlights

1 Low beams/high beams
2 Turn signal
LED headlights

1 Daytime running lights
2 Low beams/high beams
3 Turn signal

Bug light

1 Parking lights
2 Daytime running lights
3 Fog lights

LED low beams/LED high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Halogen low beams/halogen high beams

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
Bulbs: H4
1. Open the hood, refer to page 199.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow, and remove.
3. Pull off the connector.
4. Unclip spring clip, arrow, and fold down.
5. Remove the bulb from the headlight housing.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.
**Turn signal**

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.

Bulbs: PW24W

With white turn signal lights: PWY24W

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 1, and remove.
3. Unscrew the inner lid counterclockwise, and remove it.
4. Pull bulb holder out of the bulb housing; if needed, loosen it with small tilting movements if possible.
5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

**LED parking lights/LED fog lights**

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.

The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Parking lights/fog lights/daytime running lights**

Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.

Bulbs:

- Parking lights for halogen headlamps: W5W
- Parking lights for LED headlamps: W5W NBV
- Daytime running light: PSX24W
- Fog lamp: H8

**Replacing the bulbs**

1. Turn the steering wheel.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise, arrow 2, and remove.
3. Pull off the connector.
4. Remove the bulb holder.
   - Parking lights: turn the bulb holder, arrow 1, counter-clockwise and remove.
Daytime running lights: press together the upper and lower locking of the bulb holder, arrow 2, and remove the bulb holder.

For better accessibility, remove the bulb of the fog lamp as needed.

Fog lamps: turn the bulb holder, arrow 3, counter-clockwise and remove.

5. Pull the bulb out of the fixture.
6. Insert the new bulb and install the cover in the reverse order.

The daytime running lights bulb holder engages audibly, first below, then above.

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

Overview

Vehicles with a rear fog lamp

Vehicle with two rear fog lights

1 Side tail lamps
2 Rear fog lights
3 License plate lamp
4 Center brake lamp

Side tail lamps

1 Brake lights/tail lamps
2 Turn signal
3 Reversing lights

Side LED tail lights

1 Tail lamps
2 Turn signal
3  Brake light
4  Reversing lights

**Side tail lamps**
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
Bulbs: P21W
1. Open tailgate, refer to page 41.
2. Remove left or right cover.
3. Through the opening, loosen the plug connector, arrow 2 on the bulb holder. Press the latches together, arrows 1, and remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb holder from the opening.
5. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
   ▶  Arrow 1: brake lights/tail lamps
   ▶  Arrow 2: turn signal
6. Proceed in the reverse order to insert the new bulb and attach the bulb holder. Make sure that the bulb holder engages in all fasteners.

**Central brake lamp and license plate lamp**
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
The lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Vehicles with a rear fog lamp**
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
Bulbs: W16W
1. On vehicles with heat shield:
   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.
2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove. The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.

4. Replace nonworking bulb.
5. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Vehicle with two rear fog lights
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
Bulbs: W16W

Left rear fog lamp:
1. On vehicles with heat shield:
   Loosen 3 screws, arrow.
2. Push the heat shield forward and the bumper back in order to be able to reach the fog lamp.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove.

Right fog lamp:
1. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove. The wire is long enough to guide the socket down and through between any heat shield that may be installed and the bumper.
2. Replace nonworking bulb.
3. To install the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal.

Side turn signal, bulb replacement
Follow the general instructions on lights and bulbs, refer to page 209.
Bulbs:
▷ With orange lens: W5W
With white lens: WY5W

1. Open the hood. The covers of the side turn signal lights are on the left and right next to the hinges of the hood.

2. Loosen nuts of the cover by hand and remove the cover.

3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove.

4. Replace the bulb.

5. To insert the new bulb, proceed in reverse order of removal. Insert the nuts of the cover and press down.

---

**CHANGING WHEELS/ TIRES**

**Information**

When using run-flat tires or tire sealants, a tire does not need to be changed immediately in the event of pressure loss due to a flat tire.

No emergency wheel is provided with your vehicle.

The tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from your dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Jacking points for the vehicle jack**

The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the positions shown.

**Emergency wheel**

**Safety measures**

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake and engage lever in position P P.
- Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning lamp at an appropriate distance.
Perform wheel change only on a flat, solid and slip-resistant surface. On soft or slippery ground, for example, snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle or vehicle jack can slip away to the side.

Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.

If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine; otherwise, a fatal hazard exists.

Information

**WARNING**

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.

Removing the emergency wheel

The emergency wheel is housed in a well on the underbody of the vehicle. The screw connection of the emergency wheel is in the cargo area underneath the floor mat, on the floor of the storage compartment for the onboard vehicle tool kit.

1. Loosen the nut using the wheel wrench from the onboard vehicle tool kit.
2. Remove the retaining plate.
3. Screw wheel lug wrench onto the thread and hold in place with one hand.
4. Unlock the locking hexagon of the emergency wheel well using the hexagon attached to retaining plate.
5. Lower the emergency wheel with the wheel wrench.
6. Un螺丝 the wheel wrench
7. Pull out the well with emergency wheel under the vehicle toward the rear.
8. Remove the spacer and emergency wheel from the well.
9. Stow the well and spacer in the vehicle.

Prepare wheel change

1. Follow the Safety instructions, refer to page 215.
2. With the wheel chock from the onboard vehicle tool kit, also secure the vehicle against rolling away at the front wheel of the opposite side. For this, place the wheel chock behind the front wheel diagonally across.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.
Jacking up the vehicle

1. Place the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel such that the vehicle jack foot is vertically beneath the vehicle jacking point with the entire surface on the ground.

2. Insert the vehicle jack head in the rectangular recess of the jacking point for cranking it up.

3. Crank it up until the wheel in question lifts off of the ground.

Wheel mounting

Mount one emergency wheel only.

1. Unscrew the wheel lug bolts and remove the wheel.

2. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two bolts.
   
   If non-original MINI light-alloy wheels are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

3. Screw in the remaining lug bolts and tighten all bolts well in a crosswise pattern.

4. Lower the vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.

2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area.

The nonworking wheel cannot be stored in the emergency wheel bracket because of its size.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.

4. Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 113.

   Reinitialize the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 110.

5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.

Driving with emergency wheel

**WARNING**

The emergency wheel has particular dimensions. When driving with an emergency wheel, changed driving properties may occur at higher speeds, e.g., reduced lane stability when braking, longer braking distance and changed self-steering properties in the limit area. There is risk of an accident. Drive moderately and do not exceed a speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

After the trip with emergency wheel

Have the following work performed only by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

1. Replace the damaged tires as soon as possible.

2. Replace the emergency wheel with a new wheel.

3. Have the tray with the emergency wheel installed.

VEHICLE BATTERY

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.
More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Battery replacement**

**ATTENTION**

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer’s service center.

After a battery replacement, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that the vehicle battery be registered on the vehicle by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop to ensure that all comfort features are fully available and that any Check Control messages of these comfort features are no longer displayed.

**Charging the battery**

**General information**

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- When making frequent short-distance drives.
- If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.
- Steptronic transmission: when parked for long periods of time in selector lever position D, R or N.

**Information**

**ATTENTION**

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.

**Starting aid terminals**

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 221, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

**Power failure**

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Navigation system: wait for the operability of the navigation.
- Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.

**Disposing of old batteries**

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.
**FUSES**

**Information**

⚠️ **WARNING**

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the glove compartment.
BREAKDOWN ASSISTANCE

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS
The button is located above the Control Display.

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Roadside Assistance
The Roadside Assistance phone number can be viewed on the onboard monitor or a connection to Roadside Assistance can be established directly.

WARNING TRIANGLE
The warning triangle is located in the cargo area.

FIRST-AID KIT
The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area. Some of the articles have a limited service life. Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

JUMP-STARTING

Service availability
Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

General information
If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.
Information

⚠️ DANGER
Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

Preparation

⚠️ ATTENTION
In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of damage to property. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals

⚠️ WARNING
If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparks formation can occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

1. Pull off the lid of the starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.
Starting the engine
Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.
Check the battery and recharge if needed.

TOW-STARTING AND TOWING

Information

WARNING
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated, e.g., approach control warning with light braking function. There is risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Switching off Intelligent Safety systems, refer to page 115.

Steptronic transmission with driven front axle: transporting the vehicle

Information
The vehicle must not be towed if the front wheels are touching the ground.

CAUTION
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a lifted rear axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported only with lifted front axle or on a loading platform.◀

Tow truck

Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

ATTENTION
When lifting the vehicle by the tow fitting or body and chassis parts; damage can occur on vehicle parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Lift vehicle using suitable means.◀

Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

Pushing vehicle

To maneuver vehicle from the danger area, manually unlock the transmission lock, refer to page 78, if needed.

Manual transmission

Observe before towing your vehicle
Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Towing

CAUTION
If manual unlocking of the parking brake is not possible, the vehicle cannot be moved or towed. There is risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◀

Follow the following instructions:
▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle’s response.
▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Towing other vehicles

Information

⚠️ WARNING
If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle’s response. There is risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

⚠️ ATTENTION
If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

▷ Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.
▷ If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.
Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:
▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.
To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on the vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps.
ATTENTION
If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of damage to property. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.

Tow fitting

General information

The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.
The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.
The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 208, are together in the cargo area.

Information

ATTENTION
If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there can be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.

Use of the tow fitting:
▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
▷ Use tow fitting located in the front only for positioning the vehicle.

Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for example, do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Screw thread for tow fitting

Threaded holes for the tow fitting are located in the front and rear of the vehicle on the right side with respect to the direction of travel.
Push out the cover by pressing on the top edge.

Tow-starting

Steptronic transmission
Do not tow-start the vehicle.
Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the Steptronic transmission.
Have the cause of the starting problems fixed.

Manual transmission
If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 220. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 66.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.

6. Have the vehicle checked.
VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

CAR WASHES

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam jets or high-pressure washers

Information

ATTENTION
When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of damage to property. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.

Automatic car washes

Information

CAUTION
Water can penetrate in the windshield area due to high-pressure washers. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid high-pressure washers.

ATTENTION
Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Information the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Unscrew the rod antenna to avoid the rod antenna breaking off.
- Deactivate rain sensor, if necessary, to avoid damage to the wiper system.
- Do not treat the convertible top with wax. Ensure that a cycle without wax or a special cycle for convertibles is available to avoid damage to the convertible top.

In some cases, an unintentional alarm can be triggered by the interior motion sensor of the alarm system. Follow the instructions on avoiding an unintentional alarm, refer to page 45.

With front PDC: to reduce PDC false alarms, switch off automatic PDC activation on obstacle detection, for example in car washes, refer to page 134.
Before driving into a car wash

In order to ensure that the vehicle can roll in a car wash, take the following steps:

Manual transmission:
1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Shift to neutral.
3. Switch the engine off.
4. Switch on the ignition.

Steptronic transmission:
1. Drive into the car wash.
2. Engage selector lever position N.
3. Make sure that the parking brake is released.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to switch off the engine.
   In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and two Check-Control messages are displayed.

A signal sounds when you leave the vehicle while in selector lever position N.
The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal is sounded when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

To start the engine with manual transmission:
1. Press on the clutch pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

To start the engine with Steptronic transmission:
1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

Headlights

▷ Do not rub dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleansers.
▷ Soak areas that have been dirtied e. g., from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced and corrosion of the brake discs can occur.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

VEHICLE CARE

Vehicle care products

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends using care and cleaning products from MINI.

⚠️ WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.

Vehicle paint

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Caring for the convertible top

The appearance and life of the convertible top depend on correct care and operation.
Follow the following instructions:

▷ Clean roofliner with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.
▷ Do not soak the roofliner.
▷ To prevent water stains, mildew spots, and chafe marks, do not enclose the convertible top in the convertible top well for a long period and do not fold and stow the convertible top in the convertible top well while the top is wet or frozen.
▷ Remove water stains that may nevertheless have appeared on the roofliner using a microfiber cloth and an interior cleaner.
▷ When the vehicle is parked in enclosed areas for lengthy periods, ensure that the area is well ventilated.
▷ If possible, park the vehicle in the shade to protect it from intensive solar radiation so that color, rubber and fabric are not affected.
▷ Remove bird droppings immediately as their corrosive effect will otherwise attack the convertible top and damage the rubber seals.
▷ Hard to remove tree sap or bird droppings can be removed from the convertible top with special tree sap remover and a soft brush.

**CAUTION**
Spot remover, paint thinner, solvents, gasoline or similar can damage the convertible top or the rubber coating. There is a risk of property damage. To remove spots on the convertible top, use only suitable cleaning agents, for example special convertible top cleaning agent.⚠️

To remove heavy soiling, especially for light colored convertible tops, use a special convertible top cleaner.

Proceed as follows:

1. Spray the convertible top with the convertible top cleaner.

2. Make the convertible top cleaner foam up using a well saturated sponge, moving it in circular motions.

3. Finish washing the vehicle in the car wash or rinse with ample amounts of water. Otherwise, follow the instructions for use from the manufacturer.

Treat the convertible top with an impregnating agent after it has been washed three to five times.

Suitable cleaners and car products can be obtained from the service department.

**Leather care**
Remove dust from the leather often, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.
Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.
To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.
Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.
Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.
Suitable care products are available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

**Upholstery material care**
Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.
If upholstery is very dirty, for example, with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.
Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.
ATTENTION
Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of damage to property. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels
When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.
Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disk.

Chrome surfaces
Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components
Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. For cleaning, use only water and suitable care products, the manufacturer of your vehicle recommends original MINI care products.
Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing car care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts
Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components
These include:

I. Imitation leather surfaces.
II. Roofliner.
III. Lamp lenses.
IV. Instrument cluster cover.
V. Matt black spray-coated components.
VI. Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.
Do not soak the roofliner.

ATTENTION
Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Safety belts
Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

WARNING
Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.
Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.
Do not allow the switches to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING
Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose
Floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, e.g., for cleaning.

Floor mats can be removed from the car’s interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

**Sensor/camera lenses**

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

**Displays/Screens/Projection lenses**

⚠️ **ATTENTION**

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of damage to property. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

⚠️ **ATTENTION**

The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of damage to property. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Head-up Display:

For stubborn soiling on the projection lens of the Head-up Display, dampen the microfiber cloth with alcohol. Extending projection lens, refer to page 95.

**Long-term vehicle storage**

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
TECHNICAL DATA

VEHICLE FEATURES AND OPTIONS

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your car, e.g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. The respectively applicable country provisions must be observed when using the respective features and systems.

INFORMATION

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, for example, due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

DIMENSIONS

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, for example, a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, for example, due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI CONVERTIBLE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Width with mirrors</td>
<td>inches/mm</td>
<td>76.1/1,932</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width without mirrors</td>
<td>inches/mm</td>
<td>68/1,727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>inches/mm</td>
<td>55.7/1,415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
<td>inches/mm</td>
<td>151.1-152.5/3,837-3,874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelbase</td>
<td>inches/mm</td>
<td>98.2/2,495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallest turning radius diam.</td>
<td>ft/m</td>
<td>35.5/10.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## WEIGHTS

### MINI Cooper Convertible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Steptronic transmission</th>
<th>Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3,690/1,674</td>
<td>3,740/1,696</td>
<td>710/322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved front axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,010/912</td>
<td>2,070/939</td>
<td>1,770/803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.7-7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada: cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft/l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.6-7.5/160-215</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MINI Cooper S Convertible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Steptronic transmission</th>
<th>Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3,850/1,746</td>
<td>3,890/1,764</td>
<td>780/354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved front axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2,110/957</td>
<td>2,150/975</td>
<td>1,790/812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.7-7.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada: cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft/l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.6-7.5/160-215</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MINI John Cooper Works Convertible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Manual transmission</th>
<th>Steptronic transmission</th>
<th>Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved gross vehicle weight</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3,900/1,769</td>
<td>3,940/1,787</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## MINI John Cooper Works Convertible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Load</th>
<th>lbs/kg</th>
<th>800/363</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Approved front axle load</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual transmission</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>2,120/962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steptronic transmission</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>2,170/984</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approved rear axle load</td>
<td>lbs/kg</td>
<td>1,820/826</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft</td>
<td>5.7-7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada: cargo area capacity</td>
<td>cu ft/l</td>
<td>5.6-7.5/160-215</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## CAPACITIES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MINI Convertible</th>
<th>US gal/liters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuel tank, approx.</td>
<td>11.6/44.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fuel quality, refer to page 184
APPENDIX

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

UPDATES MADE AFTER THE EDITORIAL DEADLINE

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline.

▷ Opening and closing: convertible top: Manually closing the convertible top, refer to page 50.
▷ Wheels and tires: snow chains: Use, refer to page 197.
INDEX

A
ABS, Antilock Brake System 122
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 78
Accessories and parts 8
ACC, see camera-based cruise control 126
Activated-charcoal filter 149
Active Cruise Control, see camera-based cruise control 126
Additional information, onboard monitor 23
Additives, oil 202
Adjustments, seats/head restraints 54
Adjustments, steering wheel 62
After washing vehicle 227
Airbags 105
Airbags, indicator/warning light 106
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 145, 148
Air conditioner 144
Air, dehumidifying, see Cooling function 145, 147
Air distribution, manual 145, 148
Air flow, air conditioner 145
Air flow, automatic climate control 148
Air pressure, tires 186
Air vents, see Ventilation 149
Alarm system 44
Alarm triggering 44
Alarm, unintentional 45
All around the center console 16
All around the interior mirror 17
All around the steering wheel 14
All-season tires, see Winter tires 193
Alternating-code hand-held transmitter 152
Alternative oil types 202
Always Open Timer, Control Display 97
Always Open Timer, onboard computer 90
Antifreeze, washer fluid 74
Antilock Brake System, ABS 122
Anti-slip control, see DSC 122
App, MINI Motorer’s Guide 6
Approved axle load 235
Arrival time 91
Ash tray 155
Assistance, Roadside Assistance 220
Assistance when driving off 125
Assist system, refer to Intelligent Safety 115
AUTO intensity 148
Automatic car wash 226
Automatic climate control 146
Automatic Curb Monitor 60
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags 107
Automatic headlamp control 101
Automatic locking 43
Automatic recirculated-air control 148
Automatic transmission with Steptronic 75
AUTO program, automatic climate control 147
AUTO program, intensity 148
Auto Start/Stop function 68
AUX-IN port, position in vehicle 156
Average fuel consumption 90
Average speed 90
Axle loads, weights 235

B
Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 55
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 220
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 218
Battery, vehicle 217
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 222
Belts, safety belts 56
Beverage holder, cup holder 161
Bonus range, GREEN Mode 176
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 161
Brake assistant 122
Brake discs, break-in 166
Brake pads, break-in 166
Braking, information 167
Breakdown assistance 220
Break-in 166
Brightness of Control Display 93
Bug light 210
Bulb replacement 209
Bulb replacement, front 209
Bulb replacement, rear 212
Bulb replacement, side 214
Bulbs and lights 209
Button, Start/Stop 66
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 220

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Camera-based cruise control 126
Camera lenses, care 230
Camera, rearview camera 137
Can holder, see Cup holder 161
Car battery 217
Care, displays 230
Care, vehicle 227
Cargo area, enlarging 158
Cargo area partition 158
Cargo area, storage compartments 162
Cargo straps, securing cargo 171
Car key, see Remote control 34
Carpet, care 229
Car wash 226
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 167
CBS Condition Based Service 206
Center armrest 161
Center console 16
Central instrument cluster, LED ring 94
Central locking system 40
Central screen, refer to Control Display 18
Changes, technical, refer to Own Safety 7
Changing parts 208
Changing wheels 215
Changing wheels/tires 192
Chassis number, see vehicle identification number 10
Check Control 81
Checking the oil level electronically 200
Children, seating position 63
Children, transporting safely 63
Child restraint fixing system 63
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 65
Child restraint fixing systems, mounting 64
Child seat, mounting 64
Child seats 63
Chrome parts, care 229
Chrono package, cockpit 97
Cigarette lighter 155
Cleaning, displays 230
Climate control 144, 146
Clock 85
Closing/opening via door lock 40
Closing/opening with remote control 38
Coasting 177
Coasting with engine decoupled, coasting 177
Coasting with idling engine 177
Combination switch, see Turn signals 71
Combi switch, see wiper system 72
Comfort Access 41
Comfort entry 38
Compartments in the doors 161
Compass 153
Compressor 194
Condensation on windows 149
Condensation under the vehicle 168
Condition Based Service CBS 206
Configuring driving program 125
Confirmation signal 44
Control Display 18
Control Display, settings 92
Controller 19
Control systems, driving stability 122
Convenient closing with the remote control 39
Convenient opening 38
Convertible, convertible top 47
Convertible mode, automatic climate control 148
Convertible program, automatic climate control 148
Convertible, roof 47
Convertible top 47
Convertible top, care 227
Convertible top, cargo area partition 50
Convertible top, emergency operation 50
Convertible top, rollover protection system 108
Coolant 204
Cooling function 145, 147
Cooling, maximum 147
Cooling system 204
Cornering light 102
Corrosion on brake discs 168
Cosmetic mirror 155
Courtesy lamps during unlocking 38
Courtesy lamps with the vehicle locked 39
Cruise control 131
Cruise control, active 126
Cruise control with distance control, see camera-based cruise control 126
Cruise control without distance control, see cruise control 131
Cruising range 86
Cup holder 161
Current fuel consumption 86

D
Damage, tires 191
Damping control, dynamic 124
Data, technical 234, 236
Date 85
Daytime running lights 102
Defrosting, see defrosting the windows 146
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 149
Defrosting the windows 146
Dehumidifying, air 145, 147
Deleting personal data 24
Deletion of personal data 24
Destination distance 91
Digital clock 85
Digital compass 153
Dimensions 234
Dimmable exterior mirrors 61
Dimmable interior mirror 61
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 71
Display, electronic, instrument cluster 81
Display, engine temperature 90
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 103
Displays 80
Displays, cleaning 230
Disposal, coolant 205
Disposal, vehicle battery 218
Distance control, see PDC 134
Distance to destination 91
Divided screen view, split screen 23
Door lock, see Remote control 34
Drive mode, GREEN Mode 174
Drive-off assistant 125
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 122
Driving Dynamics Control 124
Driving Excitement, SPORT 91
Driving instruction, GREEN Mode 176
Driving instructions, breaking 166
Driving modes 124
Driving notes, general 167
Driving on racetracks 169
Driving stability control systems 122
Driving style analysis 178
Driving tips 167
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 122
DTC Dynamic Traction Control 123
Dynamic Damping Control 124
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 122
Dynamic Traction Control DTC 123

E
Electronic displays, instrument cluster 81
Electronic oil measurement 200
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 122
Emergency detection, remote control 35
Emergency operation, convertible top 50
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 220
Emergency start function, engine start 35
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 41
Emergency wheel, compact wheel, see Emergency wheel 215
Energy Control 86
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 68
Engine, automatic switch-off 68
Engine compartment 198
Engine compartment, working in 198
Engine coolant 204
Engine idling when driving, coasting 177
Engine oil 200
Engine oil, adding 201
Engine oil additives 202
Engine oil change 202
Engine oil filler neck 201
Engine oil types, alternative 202
Engine oil types, suitable 202
Engine start during malfunction 35
Engine start, jump-starting 220
Engine start, see Starting the engine 67
Engine stop 68
Engine temperature, display 90
Entering a car wash 226
Equipment, interior 151
Error displays, see Check Control 81
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 122
Exchanging wheels/tires 192
Exhaust system 167
Expanding the cargo area volume 158
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Exterior mirrors 60
External start 220
External temperature display 85
External temperature warning 85
Eyes for securing cargo 171

Failure message, see Check Control 81
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 45
Fan, see Air flow 145, 148
Favorites buttons, onboard monitor 24
Filler neck for engine oil 201
Fine wood, care 229
First-aid kit 220
Flat tire, changing wheels 215
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 113
Flat tire, repairing 194
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 109
Flat tire, warning lamp 110, 113
Flooding 167
Floor carpet, care 229
Floor mats, care 229
Fogged up windows 146
Fold-away position, windshield wipers 74
Folding back rear seat backrests 158
Foot brake 167
Front airbags 105
Front-end collision warning with City Braking function 116
Front fog lights 103
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 107

Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp 107
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 113
Fuel 184
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 90
Fuel filler flap 182
Fuel gauge 85
Fuel lid 182
Fuel quality 184
Fuel recommendation 184
Fuel, tank capacity 236
Fuse 219

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control 151
Gasoline 184
Gear change, Steptronic transmission 76
Gear shift indicator 87
General driving notes 167
Glare shield 155
Glove compartment 160
GREEN Mode 174
GREEN Mode, bonus range 176
GREEN Mode driving style analysis 178
GREEN Mode indicator 174
GREEN - program, driving dynamics 124
GREEN tip 176
Gross vehicle weight, approved 235
Ground clearance 168

Halogen headlights 209
Handbrake, see parking brake 71
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 152

Headlamp control, automatic 101
Headlight courtesy delay feature 101
Headlight flasher 72
Headlight glass 209
Headlights, care 227
Head restraints 54
Head restraints, front 58
Head restraints, rear 59
Head-up Display 94
Head-Up Display, Shift point indicator 96
Head-up Display, sport displays 96
Head-up Display, standard view 95
Heavy cargo, stowing 171
High-beam Assistant 102
High beams 72
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 102
Hills 168
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 125
Holder for beverages 161
Homepage 6
Hood 198
Horn 14
Hot exhaust system 167
HUD Head-up Display 94
Hydroplaning 167

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 85
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 85
Identification marks, tires 190
Identification number, see vehicle identification number 10
Ignition key, see Remote control 34
Ignition off 66
Ignition on 66
Illuminated ring, central instrument cluster 94
Indication of a flat tire 110, 113
Indicator lamp, see Check Control 81
Individual air distribution 145, 148
Individual settings, see Personal Profile 36
Inflation pressure, tires 186
Inflation pressure warning, tires 113
Info display, refer to On-Board computer 89
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 110
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 113
Instrument cluster 80
Instrument cluster, electronic displays 81
Instrument lighting 103
Integrated key 34
Integrated Owner’s Manual in the vehicle 29
Intelligent Safety 115
Intensity, AUTO program 148
Interior equipment 151
Interior lights 104
Interior lights during unlocking 38
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 39
Interior mirror 17
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 61
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 61
Interior motion sensor 45
Interior rearview mirror, compass 153
Internet site 6

Interval display, service requirements 86
Interval mode 73

J
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 215
Joystick, Steptronic transmission 76
Jump-starting 220

K
Key/remote control 34
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 41
Key Memory, see Personal Profile 36
Kickdown, Steptronic transmission 76
Knee airbag 105

L
Label on recommended tires 192
Lamp replacement 209
Lamp replacement, front 209
Lamp replacement, rear 212
Lamp replacement, side 214
Language on Control Display 93
Lashing eyes, securing cargo 171
LATCH child restraint system 65
Launch Control 78
Leather, care 228
LED bug light 210
LED headlights 210
LED ring, central instrument cluster 94
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 209

M
Maintenance 206
Maintenance requirements 206
Maintenance, service requirements 86
Maintenance system, MINI 206
Make-up mirror 155
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 81
Manual air distribution 145, 148
Manual air flow 145, 148
Manual mode, transmission 76
Manual operation, door lock 40
Manual operation, exterior mirrors 60
Manual operation, Park Distance Control PDC 135
Manual operation, rearview camera 137
Manual transmission 75
Manufacturer of the MINI 7
Marking, run-flat tires 193
Master key, see Remote control 34
Maximum cooling 147
Maximum speed, display 87
Maximum speed, winter tires 193
Measurement, units of 93
Medical kit 220
Menu in instrument cluster 89
Menus, refer to onboard monitor operating concept 20
Messages, see Check Control 81
Microfilter 146, 149
MID - program, driving dynamics 124
MINI Connected, refer to Integrated Owner’s Manual
MINI driving modes 124
MINI logo projection during unlocking 38
MINI maintenance system 206
MINIMALISM Analyser 178
MINIMALISM info 177
MINI Motorer’s Guide app 6
Minimum tread, tires 191
Mirrors 60
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 167
Mobility System 194
Mode, GREEN Mode 174
Modifications, technical, refer to Own Safety 7
Moisture in headlight 209
Monitor, refer to Control Display 18
Mounting of child restraint systems 64
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 14
Multimedia, refer to Integrated Owner’s Manual

N
Navigation, refer to Integrated Owner’s Manual
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 58
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 59
New wheels and tires 192

O
OBD Onboard Diagnostics 207
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 138
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 185
Odometer 85
Office, refer to Integrated Owner’s Manual
Oil 200
Oil, adding 201
Oil additives 202
Oil change 202
Oil change interval, service requirements 86
Oil filler neck 201
Oil types, alternative 202
Oil types, suitable 202
Old batteries, disposal 218
On-board computer 89
On-board computer, refer to On-board computer 89
Onboard Diagnostics OBD 207
Onboard monitor 18
Onboard monitor operating concept 18
Onboard vehicle tool kit 208
Opening/closing via door lock 40
Opening/closing with remote control 38
Operating menus, onboard monitor 18
Optional equipment 7
Outside air, see Automatic recirculated-air control 148
Own safety 7

P
Paint, vehicle 227
Parallel parking assistant 139
Park Distance Control PDC 134
Parked-car ventilation 149
Parked vehicle, condensation 168
Parking aid, see PDC 134
Parking assistant 139
Parking brake 71
Parking lights 100
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger side mirror, tilting downward 60
Pathway lines, rearview camera 138
PDC Park Distance Control 134
Performance Control 123
Personal Profile 36
Person warning with City light braking function 119
Phone, refer to Integrated Owner’s Manual
Pinch protection system, windows 46
Plastic, care 229
Post Crash — iBrake 121
Power failure 218
Power windows 45
Prescribed engine oil types 202
Pressure, tire air pressure 186
Pressure warning, tires 113
Profile, see Personal Profile 36
Protective function, windows 46
Push-and-turn switch, see Controller 19

R
Racetrack operation 169
Radiator fluid 204
Radio-operated key, see Remote control 34
Radio ready state 66
Radio, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual
Rain sensor 73
Ratchet straps, securing cargo 171
Rear fog lights 103
Rear lights 212
Rear luggage rack 171
Rearview camera 137
Rearview mirror 60
Rear window defroster 146, 149
Recirculated-air filter 149
Recirculated-air mode 145, 148
Recommended fuel grade 185
Recommended tire brands 192
Refueling 182
Remaining range 86
Remote control/key 34
Remote control, blocking 35
Remote control, malfunction 39
Remote control, replacing the battery 35
Remote control, universal 151
Replacement fuse 219
Replacing parts 208
Replacing the battery, remote control 35
Replacing wheels/tires 192
Reporting safety malfunctions 10
RES CNCL button, see camera-based cruise control 126
RES CNCL button, see Cruise control 131
Reserve warning, see Range 86
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 110
Retreaded tires 193
Roadside parking lights 101
Rollover protection system 108
RON recommended fuel grade 185
Roof load capacity 235
Roof, see convertible top 47
RSC Run Flat System Component, see Run-flat tires 193
Rubber components, care 229
Run-flat tires 193

S
Safe braking 167
Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 57
Safety belts 56
Safety belts, care 229
Safety belts, rear 57
Safety systems, airbags 105
Saving fuel 173
Screen, refer to Control Display 18
Screwdriver 208
Sealant 194
Seat belts, see Safety belts 56
Seat heating, front 56
Seating position for children 63
Seats 54
Securing cargo 171
Selection list in instrument cluster 89
Selector lever, Steptronic transmission 76
Sensors, care 230
Service and warranty 8
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 206
Service requirements, display 86
Service, Roadside Assistance 220
SET button, see camera-based cruise control 126
SET button, see Cruise control 131
Settings, locking/unlocking 43
Settings, mirrors 60
Settings on Control Display 92
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 77
Shift point indicator, Head-Up Display 96
Side airbag 105
Signaling, horn 14
Signals when unlocking 44
Sitting safely 54
Size 234
Snow chains 197
Socket 155
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 207
Spare fuse 219
Spare tire, see Emergency wheel 215
Speed, average 90
Speed limit detection 87
Symbols in the status field 23

T

Tachometer 85
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 41
Tail lamps 212
Technical changes, refer to Own Safety 7
Technical data 234, 236
Temperature, air conditioner 145
Temperature, automatic climate control 147
Temperature display for external temperature 85
Temperature, engine 90
Terminal, starting aid 221
Text messages, supplementary 84
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 44
Thigh support 55
Tilt alarm sensor 45
Time of arrival 91
Tire damage 191
Tire identification marks 190
Tire inflation pressure 186
Tire inflation pressure monitor, refer to FTM 113
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 109
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 194
Tires, changing 192
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 194
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 186
Tires, run-flat tires 193
Tire tread 191
Tone, refer to Integrated Owner's Manual Tools 208
Total vehicle weight 235

Touchpad 21
Towing 222
Tow-starting 222
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 109
Traction control 123
TRACTION drive mode, driving dynamics 123
Transmission lock, releasing manually 78
Transmission, manual transmission 75
Transmission, see Steptronic transmission 75
Transporting children safely 63
Tread, tires 191
Triple turn signal activation 71
Trip odometer 85
Trip onboard computer 91
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 85
Trunk, cargo area partition 158
Trunk lid 41
Trunk lid via remote control 39
Turning circle lines, rearview camera 138
Turn signal, front 209
Turn signal, side 214
Turn signals, operation 71
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 212

U

Unintentional alarm 45
Units of measurement 93
Universal remote control 151
Unlock button, Steptronic transmission 76
Unlocking/locking via door lock 40
Unlocking/locking with remote control 38
Unlocking, settings 43
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 228
USB interface, position in vehicle 156
USB port, see USB interface 156

V
Vanity mirror 155
Vehicle battery 217
Vehicle battery, replacing 218
Vehicle, break-in 166
Vehicle care 227
Vehicle care products 227
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 10
Vehicle jack 215
Vehicle paint 227
Vehicle storage 230
Vehicle wash 226
Ventilation 149
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 149
VIN, see vehicle identification number 10
Voice activation system 26

W
Warning and indicator lamps, see Check Control 81
Warning displays, see Check Control 81
Warning messages, see Check Control 81
Warning triangle 220
Warranty 7
Washer fluid 74
Washer nozzles, windshield 74
Washing, vehicle 226
Water on roads 167
Weights 235
Welcome lamps during unlocking 38
Welcome lights 101
Wheels, changing 192
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 186
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 113
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 109
Wind deflector 52
Window defroster, rear 146, 149
Windows, powered 45
Windshield cleaning system 72
Windshield defroster 146, 149
Windshield washer fluid 74
Windshield washer nozzles 74
Windshield wipers, fold-away position 74
Windshield wipers, see wiper system 72
Winter storage, care 230
Winter tires, suitable tires 193
Winter tires, tread 191
Wiper blades, replacing 208
Wiper fluid 74
Wiper system 72
Wood, care 229
Word match concept, navigation 25
Wrench 208